



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

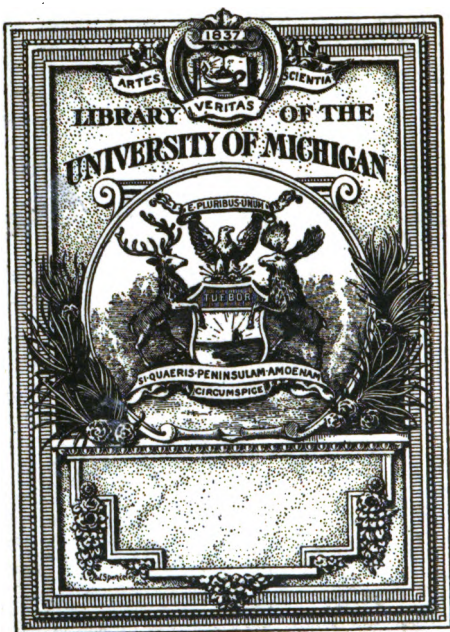
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

A 1,021,489



~~2116~~

828

12665

H2



Clarendon Press Series

THE POEMS  
OF  
LAURENCE MINOT  
*HALL*

**London**  
**HENRY FROWDE**



**OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE**  
**AMEN CORNER, E.C.**

Clarendon Press Series

THE POEMS  
OF  
LAURENCE MINOT

EDITED

*WITH INTRODUCTION AND NOTES*

BY

JOSEPH HALL, M.A.

HEAD MASTER OF THE HULME GRAMMAR SCHOOL, MANCHESTER

*'pe dedes of þer hondes þorgh reames er ronnen.'—Langtoft*

Oxford

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

M DCCC LXXXVII

[*All rights reserved*]





# CONTENTS.



	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	vii
POEMS . . . . .	i
NOTES . . . . .	37
APPENDIX . . . . .	95
NOTES ON APPENDIX . . . . .	116
GLOSSARY . . . . .	122
INDEX OF NAMES . . . . .	145
WORDS EXPLAINED IN THE NOTES . . . . .	147



## INTRODUCTION.

THE Poems of Laurence Minot have been preserved in a single Manuscript of the Cottonian Collection, Galba, E. ix. It is a large parchment folio, written in two columns to the page. The following is a table of its contents :—

- f. 1 a. Blank. On the verso is written *Chaucer, Exemplar emendate scriptum*, an inscription which led Tyrwhitt to look into the MS. and discover these poems (Ritson's Minot, pp. vii, viii).
- f. 2. A leaf inserted from a book of Hours, probably when the book was bound for Sir Robert Cotton.
- f. 3 a. Seven lines of the poem on the siege of Calais, which is written in full at the end of the MS., also an inventory of linen. The verso is blank.
- f. 4 a. 'Here bigyns Ywaine & Gaw-in', printed in Ritson's Metrical Romances, vol. i. pp. 1-169.
- f. 25 a. 'Ywain and Gawayn þus makes endyng | God grant vs al hys dere blyssing, Amen.'
- f. 25 b. 'Here bigyns þe proces of þe seuyn sages,' of which ll. 1-134, 2781-4002 are printed as supplement to the imperfect version of the Auchinleck MS. in Weber's Metrical Romances, vol. iii.
- f. 48 b. An unprinted poem of 94 lines, beginning 'Al es bot a fantum þat [we] with ffare, | vs be houes iilka day heþen make us 3are | forto wend fra þis werld naked & bare | bot our wyndyng clathe with outen any gare.'
- f. 49 a. 'Here bigins prophecies of Merlin,' see pp. 97-105.
- f. 50 b. 'Incipit narracio de domino denario,' [Sir Peny], printed in Ritson's Pieces of Ancient Popular Poetry, Second Edition, pp. 103-108.

- f. 51 b. An unprinted Rood Poem with the heading, 'Vos qui *transitis* : si crimina flere uelitis | *Per me transite* : qui sum janua vite | Bides a while and haldes ȝoure pais | and heres what God him seluen sais | hingand on þe rode.' At the end is written in a later hand 'de domino denario | mani thinges not to | be reiected.'
- f. 52 a. Minot's poems.
- f. 57 b. 'Hic incipit euangelium nichodemi,' an important poem not yet printed. It begins, 'Bitid þe time Tiberius | rewled Rome *with* realte.'
- f. 67 a. A poem on the Seven Deadly Sins, printed in *Cursor Mundi*, pp. 1527-51.
- f. 69 a. A poem on Penance, printed in *Cursor Mundi*, pp. 1560-86.
- f. 73 b. A metrical exposition of the Lord's Prayer, also printed in *Cursor Mundi*, pp. 1437-55. This ends on f. 75 a ; the verso is blank.
- f. 76 a. The Pricke of Conscience, which has been taken by Dr. Morris as the basis of his edition of Hampole's poem printed for the Philological Society.
- f. 113 b. The fly leaf has some notes on the points of a horse, beginning, 'A horss hath xxv *propertes* þat ys to say | he hath iiij off a lyon | iiij of an ox.' (See *Reliquiæ Antiquæ*, i. p. 232, for a similar scrap). Then follows in a later hand a poem on the siege of Calais in 1400; it is printed in *Reliquiæ Antiquæ*, vol. ii. pp. 21-24. On the back of f. 114 is written Richard Chawfer (? for Chawser), from which was no doubt copied the misleading title of the volume.

The handwriting of the MS. is of the first twenty years of the fifteenth century<sup>1</sup>. The evidence afforded by the poem printed

<sup>1</sup> 'Seems to have been written in the time of Richard II or towards the close of the fourteenth century; and not, as appeared to Warton, who knew nothing of the age of MSS. and probably never saw this, "in the reign of King Henry the Sixth,"' Ritson, *Metrical Romances*, iii. p. 229. Wright thinks we owe our copy of the poems to the interest awakened in the exploits of Edward the Third by Henry the Fifth's successes in France. (*Political Poems*, i. p. xxii.)

at p. 97 would be in favour of a date immediately before the Battle of Shrewsbury in 1403. For the enthusiastic partisan of the conspirators against Henry the Fourth would hardly have written in such a strain after the battle which shattered the hopes of his party. At the utmost we cannot carry the *composition* of the concluding portion of this piece down later than 1407, and it is difficult to conceive of its being copied as it stands later than the date which marks the definitive triumph of Henry the Fourth.

The Poems were printed for the first time by Ritson in 1795. The title page of this scarce book is as follows:—Poems on Interesting Events in the reign of King Edward III, written, in the year MCCCCLII by Laurence Minot. With a preface, dissertations, notes and a glossary. London: Printed by T. Bensley, for T. Egerton, Whitehall, 1795. The editor's name does not appear anywhere in the volume. The preface is followed by two dissertations, (1) On the Scottish wars of King Edward III, and (2) On the Title of King Edward III to the Crown of France. The text follows the MS. closely and accurately. Pages 55–151 are occupied by notes, mostly historical, and largely consisting of extensive quotations from Berner's translation of Froissart. The glossary, pp. 153–173 is followed by six pages of corrections and additional notes. A second edition, practically a reprint, was issued in 1825, with Ritson's name on the title. The poems were again printed by Wright, in his Political Poems and Songs relating to English History, where they occupy pp. 58–91 of the first volume. Lastly, they have been edited by Dr. Wilhelm Scholle as the fifty-second volume of Quellen und Forschungen, Strassburg. His book contains an elaborate grammatical and metrical study of the poems, a normalized text, and a few notes. The first four songs are also edited by Maetzner, Sprachproben, i. pp. 320–7; the second and ninth by Wülker in his Altenglisches Lesebuch, i. pp. 77–80, 159–61; the third, fourth, and the first 108 lines of the seventh by Morris and Skeat, in Specimens of Early English, Part ii. pp. 126–37, 315–7. A dissertation principally on the grammar and historical interest of the author was published by F. J. Bierbaum at Halle in 1876.

Of the writer, nothing is known beyond his name, which he has given us in v. i and vii. 20. No further information can be gleaned from his poems about himself. He probably mentions a friend of his in v. 59<sup>1</sup>. Three of his poems are connected with Yorkshire; the expedition of Edward Baliol was organized there, and best chronicled by some monk connected with Meaux and Bridlington; in the Battle of Neville's Cross he gives a special mention to the Archbishop of York, and in the last ballad he celebrates the exploit of a Yorkshire man.

But in the absence of direct information about the author, it may be worth while to set down what is known about his contemporaries of the same name; it may help some more fortunate searcher. The Minot family was, in the 14th century, connected mainly with the counties of York and Norfolk. Sir John Minot appears in a return of 1324 as a knight of Yorkshire (*Parliamentary Writs*, ii. p. 1174). In the first year of Edward the Third's reign he held three parts of a knight's fee in the Manor of Thresk from John Lord Mowbray (*Calend. Inquisit. post Mortem*, ii. p. 6). In 1327, while resident in the Wapentake of Brudeforth (Birdforth, N. Riding), he is associated with William Darrell in raising forces for Edward's Scottish expedition of that year (*Rotuli Scotiae*, i. p. 223 a, and p. 657 a). He obtained a grant of free warren in Carlton, Calton, Hoton and Skipton-upon-Swale, in 1333 (*Calend. Rot. Chart.* p. 167). In 1338 he is witness to a deed by which William Darell founds a chantry in Elvedmere Church (Archbishop Melton's Register, f. 265 a) to which a Laurence de Cysseford was collated in 1349 (*Zouche's Register*, f. 167 b). He was the owner of Carlton Miniot (*Yorkshire Archaeological Journal*, ii. p. 92), which was no doubt called by his name to distinguish it from the many other Carltons. The church of Carlton Minot was dedicated to St. Laurence (*id.* p. 185), a fact of some small significance when we remember that Laurence was not a very common Christian name in the 14th century.

<sup>1</sup> Add to the note on that place, that a John Badding with other sailors of the Cinque Ports entered a vessel of John Huchoun and Thomas Peverell of Sherborne in 1321-2, and carried off twenty-four livres worth of goods (*Rolls of Parliament*, i. p. 413).

Of Sir John Minot's children nothing is known directly; but the John Mynyot, Esq., who was a deponent in the Scrope and Grosvenor trial was almost certainly his son and heir (Scrope and Grosvenor Roll, i. p. 70; ii. p. 229). Besides the Yorkshire estates he held land at Bekering in Kent (*Fœdera*, iii, pt. iii. p. 190). A Sir Roger Mynyot held land from the Abbot of Egleston at Skitheby, in the Wapentake of Gilling West in 1284-5 (*Surtees Society*, xlix. p. 171). In 1298 he was summoned from Norfolk to perform military service against the Scots (*Parliamentary Writs*, i. p. 739), as also in 1300, and 1331. He was Sheriff of Northumberland in the former year (*Historical Documents, Scotland*, ii. p. 422, and *Liber Quotidianus Contrarotulatoris Garderobae*, p. 76). His name occurs frequently in documents cited by Harrison, *History of Yorkshire*. He is probably the person who held Thurning Manor in 15 Edw. I, who was lord of a manor at Langale in 13 Edw. I, and whose son Jeffrey had a town house in the parish of St. Stephen, Norwich, in 1316 (*Blomfield, History of Norfolk*, iv. p. 85, 166; viii. 280; x. 163).

Michael Myniot was a prominent London merchant of the time. In 1313 he obtained a pardon as an adherent of Lancaster (*Parliamentary Writs*, ii., p. 1174). In 1319 he was nominated by the citizens of London as their representative in the York Parliament of that year, but in 1320 he was obliged to renounce the freedom of the city (*Liber Albus*, p. 576; *Riley, Memorials of London*, letter E. 103). He was tried for extortion in 1329 (*Annales Londonienses*, in *Chronicles of Edw. I and II*, p. 244). In Harleian charter (*Brit. Museum*) 86 A. 27 of 5 Edw. III, he assigns his interest in an estate which he holds for debt. He was prospering in 6 Edw. III, and acquiring lands in Gloucestershire (*Inquisitiones post Mortem*, ii. p. 51). He was the king's wine merchant in 1338 (*Rotuli Scotiae*, i. p. 543*a*, 546*b*, 553*b*). He was dead in 1351 (*Calendar of Letters from the Mayor of London, &c.*, ed. Sharpe, p. 22, piece 41).

Another man of the same name was in the service of the king. Thomas Mynot, 'Notaire le Roi,' accompanied William Stury and William de Burtone to Holland between Dec. 6,



1351, and Feb. 26, 1352, to receive possession of the castle of Saintgeretruydensberg in Flanders (Record Office, Exchequer, Q. R. H. C. H. 7313). He is evidently a person of some importance, as he receives pay at the rate of 40 pence a day. It is perhaps worth noting that the time of his mission was contemporaneous with the capture of Guisnes, an obscure event little noticed by the English chroniclers, but treated in detail in Minot's last poem.

Minot's poems were plainly written under the immediate influence of the events which form their subjects. Indeed, in stirring times like Edward the Third's, when striking events crowded one another out of remembrance, a writer of this kind of verse must treat the topic of the moment. We may therefore assume that the poet's activity as represented in these poems extended from 1333<sup>1</sup> to 1352 A.D. There are traces of a revision, probably about the latter date, in the headings of the poems, in the use at v. 41 of Henry of Derby's later title (conferred in 1352), in the inserted connecting link, iii. 117-126, and in the added lines 57-70, 79-81, of the sixth piece<sup>2</sup>.

It is highly probable that a poet of such evident facility as Minot produced much more verse than we have here. But the only piece which I can point to, with any confidence, as his, is the Hymn to Jesus Christ and the Virgin (Religious Pieces, E. E. T. S. No. 26, p. 75), which bears a striking resemblance in style and language to the poems before us.

A characteristic feature of Minot's style is the constant use made of alliterative phrases drawn from the popular Romances<sup>3</sup>. He is thus the inheritor rather than the inventor of his style. But he uses the traditional manner, though with novelty in the combination of the well-worn phrases. Unlike the later romancers of the Sir Thopas school he makes sparing use of the *cheville* and the merely ornamental epithet. Further, he is at his

<sup>1</sup> See p. 38 for a discussion of the date of the first poem.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 65.

<sup>3</sup> This point is illustrated fully in the notes; phrases peculiar to Minot seem; 'made midelerd and þe mone,' i. 5; 'paire wapin es oway,' v. 36; 'gold gert all þat gale,' vi. 66; 'ken þow þowre crede,' viii. 4, ix. 38, xi. 14; 'with dole to dere,' viii. 10.

best in those poems where the alliteration is carried out most systematically; there is a great distance between the loose and rambling narrative of the third poem and the swing and vigour of the sixth or tenth. The long line poems, where the artistic difficulties are multiplied, are, as a whole, better and more effective than the short line ones. But the fetters of a special art tradition impose on his work a somewhat constrained and mechanical air. Nor is this relieved by any touch of imagination. There is an absence of anything like simile or metaphor; a bald and realistic simplicity prevails<sup>1</sup>. Still his turn is lyrical rather than narrative. His direct historical value is small; though he preserves now and then a curious detail which has escaped the contemporaneous English Chroniclers, he adds little to our store of facts about the wars of the third Edward. But he is the abstract of the spirit of his time, its undoubted bravery, its glitter, its savagery, its complete absence of pity for the conquered. The greatest merit of his poems lies in their warm and spontaneous expression of national feeling. His predecessors in the political poem had attacked abuses, exposed grievances, or written in the service of a faction. He is the first to speak in the name of the English nation just awakened to a consciousness of its unity and strength.

### GRAMMAR.

It must be borne in mind that the following remarks deal with the language of Minot modified by a copyist who lived at least fifty years later than the poet. Wherever forms occur in rhymes not easily varied they are specially noted as probably representing the author's own practice.

**NOUNS.** The termination of the genitive sing. in monosyllabic nouns is *es*, a distinct syllable; so *dedes*, i. 26; *Goddess*,

<sup>1</sup> Compare for instance, 'Sum lay stareand on the þe sternes, | And sum lay knocked out þaire hernes,' iii. 67, 68; 'þai sail in þe see-gronde fissesches to fede,' x. 4; 'Wele war þai armed vp to þe chin,' v. 85; and the stanza in the eighth poem which begins with l. 73.

<sup>2</sup> See the notes on i. 19, v. 59, 78, x. 19. He was plainly very imperfectly informed when he wrote the third poem.

iii. 10; *kinges*, iii. 24; &c. Exceptions are *mans*, xi. 9; *prince*, vii. 18, is disyllabic, but does not take an *s*, as it is followed by a word beginning with *s*. The disyllabic *Edwardes*, v. 76, has the full inflection; but on the other hand, *Adams*, vi. 76; *Somers*, x. 7: *Edward*, iii. 84, is uninflected. *Scottes*, i. 87 (perhaps an adjective, compare i. 79), *galaiēs*<sup>3</sup>, iii. 51, 97; *galayēs*, iii. 78; and *mens* (better *mennes*), iii. 84, are the only genitive plurals.

Four plurals in *is* occur—*stremis*, iii. 73; *brenis*, vi. 3; *helmis*, vii. 105; *drewris*, vii. 126. Elsewhere the termination is written *es*, except in *enmys*, i. 46; *pelers*, ii. 15; *sons*, iii. 15; *galays*, iii. 79; *nakers*, iv. 80; *barons*, v. 26; *kaitefs*, v. 58; *stremers*, v. 75; *sawls*, v. 88; *schilterouns* vi. 6; *sins*, vi. 81; *felaws*, vii. 135; *dais*, vii. 171; *leders*, viii. 94; *taburns*, x. 8; *ankers*, x. 14. The termination *es* forms a syllable in the disyllabic words, *gaylayes*, iii. 60; *sergantes*, v. 22; *bisschoppes*, vii. 137; but with disyllables elsewhere it does not count as a distinct syllable; compare *bischoppes*, iii. 17; *prelates*, *id.*; *tiñandes*, iii. 58; *Normandes*, *passim*; *bigingēs*, vi. 35; *sergantes*, viii. 28; *marchandes*, x. 26. In monosyllables the termination of the plural is about as frequently pronounced as not; *ines* viii. 27, rhymes with *bigins*; but *ines*, ix. 52; *dayes*, iv. 32, rhymes with *Valayse*. As a rule words the singulars of which end in a combination of two or three consonants have the *es* distinctly pronounced; so *harmes*, ii. 26, vi. 43; *knights*, iv. 29; &c.; *bankes*, vii. 21, viii. 20; *hundes*, viii. 76; *clerkes*, ix. 14. *Eghen*, vii. 92; *ine*, vii. 79, are the only plurals in *n*. Mutation plurals are *men*, i. 84; &c. and its compounds; *hend*, iii. 32 (but also *handes*, iii. 57); *fote* (dative pl., see note on iv. 59), *zere*, iii. 110; *score*, vii. 57; *myle*, viii. 42; *huriase*, v. 15; *burgase*, viii. 95, are plurals of the same form as the singular. *Frende*, vi. 19, I take to be singular; the plural is *frendes*, ii. 28, vii. 75.

ADJECTIVES. The scribe's arbitrary use of the final *e* makes the question of the adjectival inflections difficult in so short a text. *Grete*, iv. 62, is a clear case of the plural adjective. But it seems to be monosyllabic at ix. 14, though with a plural

<sup>1</sup> The dot . under a letter means it is not pronounced.

noun. So the plural *smale*, i. 6 and vi. 64, is monosyllabic, for it rhymes with *baſe*, which rhymes with *ſale* (= *sall*) at vii. 15. Compare also v. 80 for the plural *small*, rhyming with *wall*. Of the inflected definite adjective there is no clear example, though the reading *false*, vii. 72, decidedly improves a halting rhythm. The proper adjectives, *Franche*, i. 13; vii. 77, 118, 151; viii. 33, 46; xi. 24; *Duche*, iii. 20, are disyllabic; compare *Bruysé blode* in Thomas of Erceldoune, 482; &c. We may conclude that when Minot wrote, the adj. inflections had almost disappeared in his dialect, but were still occasionally available for verse. Adjectives are compared by *er* and *est*; *more* and *most* are not used in comparisons. The comparative *lenger*, iv. 35, with vowel change, may be noted.

PRONOUNS. The personal pronouns are *I*, *me*, *we*, *us*; *pou* (*tou*, in combination with verbs, *saltou*, *wiltou*, *ertou*), *þe*, *ʒe* (nominative), *ʒow* (dative, as at vi. 1. 21, and accusative). The demonstrative pronoun of the third person is Sing. Nom. *he*, *it*, *yt*; Dat. and Acc. *him*, *hym*, *it*; Pl. Nom. *þai*, *þay*; Dat. and Acc. *þam*. The simple personal pronoun serves also as a reflexive, but *him self* occurs once, ix. 50. The possessive pronouns are *my*, *mi* (v. 4. 5), *þi*, *þine* (absolute), *his*, *owre*, *ʒowre*, *þaire*, *þayre* (iii. 23). The demonstrative pronouns are *þis*, Plural *þir*, *þise* (ii. 26); *þat*, Plural *þa* (v. 61), *þo* (iv. 32, v. 57). The definite article *þe* is not inflected; but the variant form *þa* occurs once at vii. 166. The regular relative pronoun for both persons and things is *þat*; *who* occurs once, vi. 29; *who so* twice, iii. 118, v. 69; *wham* once, xi. 4; *what* at iii. 88; *what* and *whilk* are also used accompanied by nouns. Noteworthy adjective pronouns are *fele*, iii. 17, x. 5; *fone*, ii. 28, v. 45; *fune*, ii. 29. *Many*, *mani*, is used before a singular noun without the indefinite article, so *many kene knight*, v. 26, 42.

VERBS. The glossary should be specially consulted for the inflections of *be*, *mai*, *sal*, *will*, *kun*, *dar*, *wit* and *mot*. In the pres. ind. sing. the first person has no inflection (*sai*, vii. 73; *say*, v. 31; *here*, i. 65), that of the second person occurs once in *sittes*, i. 1, while the third has *es*, *es*, *s* or *is* (*betes*, ii. 25; *takes*, viii. 27; *haues*, xi. 36; *has*, ii. 4; *fars*, iii. 40; *wakkins*, vi. 10; *ordanis*, a single instance of this termination, iv. 5). A solitary

first person plural is *we knaw*, vii. 125; the second person is also uninflected, unless *haues*, in 'For þou and sir Iohn þi son haues cast me in care,' ix. 60, be taken as such; the third person is uninflected when the nominative is a pronoun, otherwise it takes *es* (*þai sail*, x. 4; *ligges*, iii. 99; *makes*, v. 3; but *mase*, viii. 34). A midland form occurs twice in *lien*, and *gapin* (rhymes with *wapin*), vii. 135.

The imperative sing. is as a rule flexionless (*send*, i. 7; *dresce*, i. 8). *Gretes* and *wendes*, xi. 29, seem to be exceptions. The endings of the plural are *es*, *s*, *is* (*hides*, vi. 17; *herkins*, vi. T. 1; *helis*, vi. 17); sometimes it is flectionless, as in *war*, ii. 6.

The present subjunctive is without distinctive terminations.

In the preterites of the strong verbs only one word shows the termination of the plural, *songen*, vii. 138, where the ablaut has disappeared. *Nomen*, ix. 53, which, as the MS. stands, must be a pret. plural, is probably a past participle, *had* having dropped out. All other verbs make no distinction between the sing. and plural in this tense.

The inflection of the preterite of weak verbs is the same throughout, and is either *ed*, *id*, *d* or *t*. Forms in *id* are, *helpid*, *delid*, *leuid*, *bileuid*, *likid*, *semid*. Full and shortened forms of the same word occur, as *delt*, vii. 98; *delid*, vii. 141. The following strong forms, preterites, or past participles in Minot have since been replaced by weak ones—*wroken*, *wrokin*, ii. 4, 5; *schope*, iii. 1; *wex*, iv. 48; *zolden*, viii. 89; *baken*, ix. 51.

Infinitives in *en* and *n* are *witten*, vii. 4; *slaken*, ix. 49 (both in rhyme); *saine*, i. 81 (rhymes with *plaine*). In all other cases this mood has no inflection. The usual sign of the infinitive is *to*; *at* (three times), and *for to* go with the gerundial infinitive.

The present participles which occur—*alweldand* (adjective), *dareand*, *fleand* (rhymes with *understand*), *ligand*, *stareand*, *sayland*, *wepeand* (rhymes with *understand*), *wonand*—all end in the Northern termination *and*. The strong past participle ends in *en*, *n*, or *in*, *yn*—the last two only in *betin*, ii. 8; *etin*, viii. 74, 76, 77; *to-dongyn*, vii. 148; *wrokin*, ii. 5. The weak past participle ends in *ed*, *d* or *t*, as *slaked* (rhymes with *naked*), i. 53; *mend*, i. 29. *Flemid*, *leuid*, *menid*, *wapnid* have *id*.

Of the adverbs, the following are noteworthy: genitive forms

—*whils, els* ; datives—*whilum, o-ferrum, to-3ere* ; accusative—*so gat* ; instrumental—*for þi*. Comparatives are—*fer, ferr, here*, x. 14, *nerr*. *Senin*, ix. 44, is probably a scribe's slip for *seþin*. The adverbial inflection *e* is silent, so *wide*, i. 37 ; *dere*, i. 43.

It follows from the above remarks that the Grammar of the poems is in its main features Northern. The most noteworthy evidences of this are, the termination of the present indicative plural in *es*, the general absence of the termination of the infinitive, the use of *sal* and *suld*, of *ger* and *mun*, the ending of the present participle in *and*, the *en* of the past participle of strong verbs, the contracted *bud* (= behoved), the plural *hend*, the absence of plurals in *en* (except *eghen, ine*), the use of *þir, ilk, ilka, ilkone, slike* and *sere*, of *at* with the infinitive, of *fra* (=from), *tíl* (=to), of *sogat* (=in such a way), and of *o-ferrum*. Northern also is the vocabulary, as the occurrence of the following words specially Northern shows—*big* (=to build), *biging, boun, busk, cant, cantly, dump, droupe, euill, flay* (to terrify), *gate, hundereth, ken, lithes, site, skriþ, sowed* (=smarted), *sternes, tipandes, wall* (=choice), *waniand, wery* (=to curse). The alliterative style points in the same direction. Northern, too, in the main, is the Phonology, a point which has been fully worked out by Dr. Scholle. It may suffice here to point out that *k* persists in *kirk, ilk*, &c. ; *g* and *gg* in words like *lig, ligand, brig, rig, ligges*, where the corresponding Southern form has either softened or rejected them ; and that the Northern *a* is retained as the representative of O. E. *ā* in *lare, sare, þare, mare*—all rhyming with *care*. But at the same time *o* is largely found as its representative, thus *more* and *sore* rhyme with *score*.

The dialect, then, is in basis Northern, but with a slight admixture of Midland forms. As rhymes like *gapin—wapin* show, we must set down these latter to the poet, and not to the transcriber. We may, therefore, infer that the poet lived on the border-land between the Northern and Midland areas ; and to the east rather than the west, on the evidence of the terminations of the present plural indicative of the verbs. It is difficult to separate the characteristics of the poet and the

scribe; but a comparison of other poems in the same MS., as, for instance, Ywaine and Gawin and the piece printed at p. 97 goes to show that the scribe was more distinctly Northern. Possibly Minot belonged to the Norfolk branch of the family, while his transcriber might be a Lincolnshire or Yorkshire man (see p. 118, note on l. 134). But it may well be that the scribe had before him a copy made by a Midland man, and not that of Minot.

### METRE.

Five of the poems (ii, v, ix, x, xi) are written in the alliterative *long line* with end rhyme. This form was mainly connected with the Northern and West Midland areas in the fourteenth century. Having a certain kinship to the Old English alliterative verse, the strict syllabic principle is of little account in it, but it depends on stresses more or less regularly occurrent. It is a popular measure especially suited for recitation.

This *long line* is divided by a middle pause into two parts (indeed in the MS., for reasons of space, there being two columns to each page, the last three poems are written in half lines). In each half line there are at least two main *accents*, falling as a rule on the syllables having the alliterative letter. If there be three alliterative syllables, as in xi. 1, 2, there are also three main *accents*. In addition to the main *accents*, secondary stresses to the number of two or three occur in most lines<sup>1</sup>. Either half line may end in a syllable altogether outside the measure, as ix. 49, 50, 6. There is considerable freedom as to the number of syllables in the measure; the prevailing rhythm is trochaic and dactylic.

Of the other poems, all written in *short line* with an iambic rhythm, the third and the first twenty lines of the seventh are in rhyming couplets of four measures to each line (with an occasional line of three, as iii. 3). The first measure often consists of a single syllable as in iii. 1, 'Gód | þat schópe | both sé | and sánd;,' so also iii. 12, 40, 61, 83, 89, 98, 102, 104, 110, 116-120;

<sup>1</sup> Scholle lays down the rule that each line has either 4 + 3 or 3 + 3 accents, but many lines, especially in the first half, are then irregular.

vii. 1, 6, 12, 13, 18, 19. Trisyllabic measures occasionally occur, as in 'Fór | þe gude wíll | þat þái | war ín,' iii. 116; 'Oure kíng | was cómen | trewly | to téll,' iii. 11; 'When Phílip þe Válas hérd | of þís,' iii. 41; 'óf | a grete clérk | þat Mér|lin híght,' vii. 2. The effect of this verse form in Minot's hands is inartistic, the formlessness of such lines as iii. 70, 99, 105, 106 is curious.

The rhyme formulae of the remaining poems are *aabccb* (iv.), *ababbcb* (vii. 21-172, viii.), *abababab* (i. vi.), the last three stanzas of the sixth being extended to *ababababacac*. With the exception of the half line of the last three stanzas, the sixth poem is written throughout in lines of three measures, the seventh and eighth have four measures to the line, the first and fourth vary between three and four measures. The one syllable measure at the beginning of the line, and the occasional trisyllabic foot are also met with here, as in 'Gái | þai wár | and wéle | þai thóght,' i. 41; 'Óút | of his égh | en I vnderstánd,' viii. 92.

The elaboration of the alliterative effects in these poems should be noted. Alliteration of the same letter is often continued through a pair of lines, as i. 21, 22; vii. 83, 84; x. 21, 22. Double alliteration occurs frequently in the *long line* with a rich effect, as, 'I wald noght SPare for to SPEke · wist I to SPede,' x. 1; 'For at þe Neul Cros · Nedes bud þam Knele,' ix. 28. Medial alliteration of R seems intended in such lines as 'A BORE es BROght on Bankes BaRe,' vii. 21; 'þe FRanche men war FREk to FaRe,' i. 13; 'A weRE es WRoght, i-wis,' vi. 31; 'Or 3e Be BROght on BeRe,' vi. 48. This elaboration is a mark of the later alliterative poetry; see Joseph of Arimathie (E. E. T. S., O. S., No. 44), p. x.

Except in the matter of capital letters, the *text* of the present edition follows the MS. closely. It seemed to me the bulk of the poems was hardly great enough to give a sure basis for an attempt at restoration. At the same time the most noteworthy readings of Scholle's (S) normalized edition are given in the footnotes, where R stands for Ritson's edition of 1795 (see p. iii).

In the *notes* an attempt has been made to illustrate the affinity of Minot's style with the language of the Middle



English romances, and to give so much historical information as will make the poems intelligible.

My best thanks are due to Mr. F. York Powell, who encouraged me to undertake this book, and helped me throughout; to the Rev. Professor Skeat, who read the proofs and gave me many valuable hints; to Mr. E. Maunde Thompson, to Mr. H. H. Howorth, and to many other friends.

THE HULME GRAMMAR SCHOOL, MANCHESTER,

*May 14th, 1887.*

## A LIST OF BOOKS QUOTED BY BRIEF TITLES IN THE NOTES.

- Aiol et Mirabel*, ed. Foerster. Heilbronn, 1876-82.  
*Alisaunder*, see Weber.  
*Alisaunder fragment*, in *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat.  
*Amis and Amiloun*, ed. Kölbing. Heilbronn, 1884.  
*Anturs of Arther*, see Robson.  
*Awntyrs of Arthure*, see Laing.  
*The Babees Book*. E. E. T. S., O. S. no. 32.  
*Bernardus, and Early Scottish Prophecies*. E. E. T. S., O. S. no. 42.  
*Bestiary* (in *Old English Miscellany*). E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 49.  
*Beues of Hamtoun*. MS. 8009 Chetham Library, Manchester.  
BÖDDEKER, *Altenglische Dichtungen des MS. Harl. 2253*. Berlin, 1878.  
*Bruce*. E. E. T. S., E. S., nos. xi, xxi, xxix.  
*Castel off Loue*. Philological Society, 1864.  
*Cheuelere Assigne*. E. E. T. S., E. S., no. vi.  
*Cleanness* (in *E. E. Alliterative Poems*). E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 1.  
*Cursor Mundi*. Early English Text Society, O. S. nos. 57, 59, 62, 66, 68.  
*pe Deuelis Perlament*. E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 24.  
*Early English Poems*. Philological Society. Berlin, 1862.  
*Early English Psalter*. Surtees Society, nos. xvi, xix.  
*Emare*, see Ritson.  
*Erl of Tolous*, ed. Lüdtke. Berlin, 1881.  
*Gawayne and the Green Knight*. E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 4.  
*Genesis and Exodus*. E. E. T. S., O. S. no. 7.  
*Guy of Warwick*. E. E. T. S., E. S. nos. xxv, xxvi.  
HALLIWELL, *The Thornton Romances*. Camden Society, 1844.  
HAMPOLE'S *Psalter*, ed. Bramley. Oxford, 1884.  
HAMPOLE, *The Pricke of Conscience*. Philological Society, 1863.  
*Havelok the Dane*. E. E. T. S., E. S. no. iv.  
HORSTMANN, *Altenglische Legenden, neue folge*. Heilbronn, 1881.  
(Quoted as Horst. A. L. ii.)  
HORSTMANN, *Barbour's Legendensammlung*, 2 vols. Heilbronn, 1881-2.  
HORSTMANN, *Sammlung Altenglischer Legenden*. Heilbronn, 1878.  
(Quoted as Horst. A. L. i.)

- Hymns to the Virgin and Christ.* E. E. T. S., O. S. no. 24.  
*Ipomadon.* MS. 8009, Chetham Library, Manchester (quoted from Dr. Kölbing's forthcoming edition).  
*Ipomydon*, see Weber.  
*Juliana.* E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 51.  
*King Horn*, ed. Wissmann. Strassburg, 1881.  
*Knight of Curtesy*, see Ritson.  
*Kyng of Tars*, see Ritson.  
 LAING, *Ancient Scottish Poetry.* Edinburgh, 1885.  
 LANGTOFT (original French), ed. Wright. Rolls Series, 1866-8.  
 LANGTOFT'S *Chronicle*, ed. Hearne, 2 vols. London, 1810.  
*Launfal*, see Ritson.  
 LAJAMON'S *Brut*, ed. Madden, 3 vols. London, 1847.  
*Lay le Freine*, see Weber.  
*Le bone Florence*, see Ritson.  
*Le Débat des Hérauts d'Armes.* Société des Anciens Textes Français. Paris, 1877.  
*Lybeaus Disconus*, see Ritson.  
 MAETZNER, *Altenglische Sprachproben*, 2 vols. Berlin, 1867-9.  
 MAETZNER, *Wörterbuch.* Berlin, 1878-85.  
*Monumenta Franciscana*, ed. Brewer. Rolls Series, 1858.  
*Morte Arthur*, ed. Perry. E. E. T. S., O. S. no. 8.  
*Reliquiae Antiquae*, ed. Wright and Halliwell, 2 vols. London, 1841-3.  
*Myrc, Duties of a Parish Priest.* E. E. T. S., O. S. no. 31.  
*Octavian*, ed. Sarrazin. Heilbronn, 1885.  
*Otuel.* E. E. T. S., E. S. no. xxxix.  
*Partenay or Lusignen.* E. E. T. S., O. S. no. 22.  
*Patience* (in *E. E. Alliterative Poems*). E. E. T. S., O. S. no. 1.  
 PEACOCK, *The Dialect of Manley and Corringham.* E. Dialect Society. London, 1877.  
*Pearl, the* (in *E. E. Alliterative Poems*). E. E. T. S., O. S. no. 1.  
 PECOCK, *Repressor of overmuch blaming of the Clergy.* Rolls Series, 2 vols. 1860.  
 PERCY'S *Folio Manuscript.* 3 vols. Edd. Furnivall and Hales. London, 1867-8.  
*Piers Plowman*, ed. Skeat. 5 vols. E. E. T. S., O. S. nos. 28, 38, 54, 67, 81.  
*Political, Religious and Love Poems.* E. E. T. S., O. S. no. 15.  
*Promptorium Parvulorum*, ed. Way. 3 vols. Camden Society, 1843-53-65.  
*Ratis Raving.* E. E. T. S., O. S., no. 43.  
*Rauf Coilyear*, see Laing.  
*Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse.* E. E. T. S., O. S. no. 26.

- Richard Coer de Lion*, see Weber.  
*Richard the Redeless*, see Piers Plowman, part iii.  
 RITSON, *Ancient English Metrical Romances*, 3 vols. London, 1802.  
 ROBSON, *Three E. E. Metrical Romances*. Camden Society, 1842.  
*Roland fragment*. E. E. T. S., E. S. no. xxxix.  
*Rouland and Vernagu*. E. E. T. S., E. S. no. xxxix.  
*Rowland and Otuell*. E. E. T. S., E. S. no. xxxv.  
*Sege off Melayne*. E. E. T. S., E. S. no. xxxv.  
*Seuyn Sages*, see Weber.  
*Seyn Julian*, E. E. T. S., O. S. no. 51.  
*Sir Amadace*, see Robson.  
*Sir Cleges*, see Weber.  
*Sir Degreuant*, see Halliwell.  
*Sir Eglamour*, see Halliwell.  
*Sir Ferumbras*. E. E. T. S., E. S. no. xxxiv.  
*Sir Gowther*, ed. Breul. Oppeln, 1886.  
*Sir Isumbras*, see Halliwell.  
*Sir Orfeo*, ed. Zielke. Breslau, 1880.  
*Sir Perceval*, see Halliwell.  
*Sir Tristrem*, ed. Kölbing. Heilbronn, 1882.  
 SKELTON, *Poems*, ed. Dyce. 2 vols. London, 1843.  
 SMALL, *English Metrical Homilies*. Edinburgh, 1862.  
*Sowdone of Babylone*. E. E. T. S., E. S. no. xxxviii.  
*Squyr of Lowe Degre*, see Ritson.  
*St. Marherete*. E. E. T. S., O. S. no. 13.  
*Stewart's Boece*. 3 vols. Rolls Series, 1858.  
*Suete Susan*, see Laing.  
*Syr Tryamour*. Percy Society.  
*Thomas of Erceldoune*, ed. Brandl. Berlin, 1880.  
*Torrent of Portugal*, ed. Halliwell. London, 1842.  
*Towneley Plays*. Surtees Society, no. iii.  
*The Destruction of Troy*. E. E. T. S., O. S., nos. 39, 44. (Quoted as Troy Book).  
*Wallace, by Henry the Minstrel*. Glasgow, 1869.  
 WEBER, *Metrical Romances*. 3 vols. Edinburgh, 1810.  
*William of Palerne*. E. E. T. S., E. S., no. i.  
 WRIGHT, *Political Poems*. 2 vols. Rolls Series, 1859-61.  
 WRIGHT, *Political Songs*. Camden Society, 1839.  
*Wyntoun*, ed. Laing. 3 vols. Edinburgh, 1872-9.  
*York Plays*, ed. L. T. Smith. Oxford, 1885.  
*Ywayne and Gawin*, see Ritson.

- BLOMFIELD'S *History of Norfolk*. 1805-10.  
*Chronique d'un Bourgeois de Valenciennes*, ed. Lettenhove, published for the Académie Royale de Belgique, 1877.  
*Chronique Normande*. Société de l'Histoire de France. Paris, 1868.  
 DE KLERK, *Van den derden Edewaert*, ed. Willems. Gent, 1840.  
 FROISSART, mostly quoted from Lettenhove's ed. published for the Académie Royale de Belgique. 25 vols. 1870-7.  
 LOCKHART'S *Isle of Wight*; in the History of Hampshire by Woodward and others. 3 vols. London, n. d.  
 MEYER, *Commentarii sive Annales Rerum Flandricarum*. Antverpiæ, 1561.  
*Nangis*, ed. H. Géraud. Société de l'Histoire de France. Paris, 1843.  
 OUDEGHERST, *Annales de Flandres*. 2 vols. Ghent, 1789.  
 VILLANI, *Istoria Fiorentina*. 8 vols. Milan, 1802.

## CORRECTIONS.

- P. 17, for f. 54a read f. 54a<sup>2</sup>.  
 P. 140, under þa insert þo, iv. 32. v. 57.  
 P. 141, first column, l. 11. read these for those.

# MINOT.

## I.

Lithes and I, sall tell þow tyll  
þe bataille of Halidon Hyll.

[f. 52 a<sup>1</sup>.

TREW king, þat sittes in trone,  
Vnto þe I tell my tale,  
And vnto þe I bid a bone,  
For þou ert bute of all my bale.  
Als þou made midelerd and þe mone 5  
And bestes and fowles grete and smale,  
Vnto me send þi socore sone  
And dresce my dedes in þis dale.

In þis dale I droupe and dare  
For dern dedes þat done me dere. 10  
Of Ingland had my hert grete care  
When Edward founded first to were.  
þe Franche men war frek to fare  
Ogaines him, with scheld and spere ;  
þai turned ogayn with sides sare, 15  
And al þaire pomp noght worth a pere.

Title, l. 2. *All* or *of* is to be inserted before *þe*.  
is the only form in rhyme, iv. 58 ; vi. 26.

4. *bute*] *bote*  
6. *fowles*] *briddes* S.  
10. *dern*] perhaps *derue* is to be read. *done*] *dose* S.

A pere of prise es more sum tyde  
 Pan all þe boste of Normondye.  
 Þai sent paire schippes on ilka side  
 With flesch and wine and whete & rye. 20  
 With hert and hand, es noght at hide,  
 For to help Scotland gan þai hye:  
 Þai fled, and durst no dede habide,  
 And all paire fare noght-wurth a flye.

ffor all paire fare þai durst noght fight, 25  
 For dedes dint had þai slike dout;  
 Of Scotland had þai neuer sight  
 Ay whils þai war of wordes stout.  
 Þai wald haue mend þam at paire might  
 And besy war þai þareabout. 30  
 Now God help Edward in his right,  
 Amen, and all his redy rowt.

His redy rout mot Ihesu spede  
 And saue þam both by night and day;  
 Þat lord of heuyn mot Edward lede 35  
 And maintene him als he wele may.  
 Þe Scottes now all wide will sprede  
 For þai haue failed of paire pray;  
 Now er þai dareand all for drede  
 Þat war bfore so stout and gay. 40

Gai þai war and wele þai thoght  
 On þe Erle Morre and oþer ma;  
 Þai said it suld ful dere be boght  
 Þe land þat þai war flemid fra.

22. *Forto* always in one word in the MS.  
 writes *ihesus* in full at f. 64 a<sup>2</sup>.

33. The same scribe

Philip Valays wordes wrought 45

And said he suld paire enmys sla;  
Bot all paire wordes was for noght, [f. 52 a<sup>2</sup>.  
pai mun be met if pai war ma.

Ma manasinges ȝit haue pai maked,  
Mawgre mot pai haue to mede. 50

And many nightes als haue pai waked  
To dere all Ingland with paire dede.  
Bot, loued be God, ȝe pride es slaked  
Of pam ȝat war so stout on stede,  
And sum of pam es leuid all naked 55  
Noght fer fro Berwik opon Twede.

A litell fro pat forsaid toune  
Halydon hill pat es ȝe name,  
Pare was crakked many a crowne  
Of wild Scottes and alls of tame: 60  
Pare was paire baner born all doune;  
To mak slike boste pai war to blame:  
Bot neuer ȝe les ay er pai boune  
To wait Ingland with sorow and schame.

Shame pai haue als I here say; 65

At Donde now es done paire daunce,  
And wend pai most anoper way  
Euyn thurgh Flandres into France.

On Filip Valas fast cri pai  
Pare for to dwell and him avaunce; 70

And no thing list pam ȝan of play  
Sen pam es tide ȝis sary chance.

68. The nasalized *a* in Romance words before *mb*, *ng*, *nc*, *nd*, *nt* (ten Brink, *C's Sprache*, § 70) is written either *a* or *au* in the MS.; so both *France* and *Fraunce*, *chance* and *chaunce*, &c. 69. *Valas*] so four times in MS. *Valays*, vii. 144, and *Valayse*, iv. 31, in rhyme.



Dis sary chaunce þam es bitid,  
 For þai war fals and wonder fell;  
 For cursed caitefes er þai kid 75  
 And ful of treson, suth to tell.  
 Sir Ion þe Comyn had þai hid,  
 In haly kirk þai did him qwell;  
 And þarfore many a Skottis brid  
 With dole er dight þat þai most dwell. 80  
 Þare dwelled oure king, þe suth to saine,  
 With his menþe a litell while;  
 He gaf gude confort on þat plaine  
 To all his men about a myle.  
 All if his men war mekill of maine 85  
 Euer þai douted þam of gile;  
 Þe Scottes gaudes might no thing gain,  
 For all þai stumbilde at þat stile.  
 Þus in þat stowre þai left þaire liue  
 Þat war bifore so proud in prese. 90  
 Iheru, for þi woundes fue,  
 In Ingland help vs to haue pese.

## II.

Now for to tell þow will I turn  
 Of þe batayl of Banocburn.

SKOTTES out of Berwik and of Abirdene, [f. 52 b<sup>1</sup>.

At þe Bannok burn war 3e to kene;  
 Þare slogh 3e many sakles, als it was sene,  
 And now has king Edward wroken it, I wene,  
 It es wrokin, I wene, wele wurth þe while; 5  
 War 3it with þe Skottes for þai er ful of gile.

80. þat] better þar.

Title, 1. 2. þe supplied by R.

6. 3it] þow S.

Whare er 3e, Skottes of Saint Iohnes toune?  
 þe boste of 3owre baner es betin all doune;  
 When 3e bosting will bede sir Edward es boune  
 For to kindel 3ow care and crak 3owre crowne: 10  
 He has crakked 3owre croune, wele worth þe while;  
 Schame bityde þe Skottes for þai er full of gile.

Skottes of Striflin war steren and stout;  
 Of God ne of gude men had þai no dout;  
 Now haue þai, þe pelers, priked about; 15  
 Bot at þe last sir Edward rifild þaire rout,  
 He has rifild þaire rout, wele wurth þe while,  
 Bot euer er þai vnder, bot gaudes and gile.

Rughfute riueling, now kindels þi care,  
 Berebag with þi boste, þi biging es bare 20  
 Fals wretche and forsworn whider wiltou fare?  
 Busk þe vnto Brug and abide þare;  
 Pare, wretche, saltou won and wery þe while;  
 þi dwelling in Donde es done for þi gile.

þe Skotte gase in Burghes and betes þe stretes, 25  
 All þise Inglis men harmes he hetes;  
 Fast makes he his mone to men þat he metes,  
 Bot fone frendes he findes þat his bale betes:  
 Fune betes his bale, wele wurth þe while,  
 He vses all threting with gaudes and gile. 30

Bot many man thretes and spekes ful ill  
 þat sum tyme war better to be stane still;

18. *Bot euer*] perhaps *And euer* is to be read. 22. *brig* MS.  
 25. *Skotte*] So R. *Skottes* in MS. 26. *All þise*] perhaps better  
*In all wise*; see iii. 47.

þe Skot in his wordes has wind for to spill,  
 For at þe last Edward sall haue al his will:  
 He had his will at Berwik, wele wurth þe while; 35  
 Skottes broght him þe kayes, bot get for paire gile.

## III.

How Edward þe king come in Braband  
 And toke homage of all þe land.

GOD þat schope both se and sand  
 Saue Edward king of Ingland,  
 Both body, saul and life,  
 And grante him ioy withowten strif:  
 For mani men to him er wroth 5  
 In Fraunce and in Flandres both:  
 For he defendes fast his right,  
 And þarto Iheru grante him might,  
 And so to do both night and day,  
 þat yt may be to Goddes pay. 10

Oure king was cumen, trewly to tell, [f. 52 b<sup>2</sup>.  
 Into Brabant for to dwell.  
 þe kayser Lowis of Bauere,  
 þat in þat land þan had no pere,  
 He and als his sons two 15  
 And oþer princes many mo,  
 Bisschoppes and þrelates war þare fele  
 þat had ful mekill werldly wele,  
 Princes and pople, ald and ȝong

34. S. supplies *sir* before *Edward*.

2. *Ingland*] *Ingeland* S., see vi. 1, note.

11. *trewly*] so S., *trely*

MS. 15. *sons*] *sunes* S.; perhaps better, *He and his two sons also*.

Al þat spac with Duche tung, 20  
 All þai come with grete honowre  
 Sir Edward to saue and socoure,  
 And *proferd* him, with all payre rede,  
 For to hald þe kinges stede.  
 Þe duke of Braband, first of all, 25  
 Swore, for thing þat might bifall,  
 Þat he suld, both day and night,  
 Help sir Edward in his right,  
 In toun, in feld, in frith and fen ;  
 Þis swore þe duke and all his men 30  
 And al þe lordes þat with him lend  
 And parto held þai yp þaire hend.  
 Þan king Edward toke his rest  
 At Andwerp, whare him liked best ;  
 And þare he made his mone playne 35  
 Þat no man suld say þare ogayne ;  
 His mone þat was gude and lele,  
 Left in Braband ful mekill dele ;  
 And all þat land vntill þis day  
 Fars þe better for þat iornay. 40

When Philip þe Valas herd of þis,  
 Þarat he was ful wroth, i-wis ;  
 He gert assemble his barounes  
 Princes and lordes of many tounes.  
 At Pariss toke þai þaire counsaile 45  
 Whilk pointes might þam moste availe ;  
 And in all wise þai þam bithoght  
 To stroy Ingland and bring to noght.  
 Schipmen sone war efter sent  
 To here þe kinges cumandment ; 50

19. *þong*] *þung* S. 40. *better*] *bet* S. improving grammar and  
 metre. 42. *i-wis*] *I wis* MS.

And þe galaies men also  
 Þat wist both of wele and wo.  
 He cumand þan þat men suld fare  
 Till Ingland, and for no thing spare  
 Bot brin and sla both man and wife 55  
 And childe, þat none suld pas with life:  
 Þe galay men held vp þaire handes  
 And thanked God of þir tipandes.

At Hamton, als I vnderstand, [f. 53 a<sup>1</sup>.  
 Come þe gaylayes vnto land, 60  
 And ful fast þai slogh and brend,  
 Bot noght so mekill als sum men wend;  
 For, or þai wened, war þai mett  
 With men þat sone þaire laykes lett.  
 Sum was knocked on þe heuyd 65  
 Þat þe body þare bileuid;  
 Sum lay stareand on þe sternes,  
 And sum lay knocked out þaire hernes:  
 Þan with þam was none oper gle,  
 Bot ful fain war þai þat might fle. 70  
 Þe galay men, þe suth to say,  
 Most nedes turn anoper way;  
 Þai soght þe stremis fer and wide  
 In Flandres and in Seland syde.

Þan saw þai whare Cristofer stode 75  
 At Armouth, opon þe flude;  
 Þan went þai þeder all bidene  
 Þe galayes men with hertes kene,  
 Viiij. and xl. galays and mo,  
 And with þam als war tarettes two, 80

60. *gaylayes*] a mistake for *galayes*. 69. *with þam* is suspicious;  
 rather something like '*þam likes now nan oper gle*,' Cursor, 54. 76.  
*Armouth*] *Areemouth* S., see vi. I, note. 77. *went*] so Wright,  
*ven* MS. See Havelok, ed. Skeat, p. xxxvii.

And oper many of galiotes,  
 With grete noumber of smale botes;  
 All þai houed on þe flode  
 To stele sir Edward mens gode.  
 Edward oure king þan was noght þere, 85  
 Bot sone when it come to his ere,  
 He sembled all his men full still  
 And said to þam what was his will.  
 Ilk man made him redy þen,  
 So went þe king and all his men 90  
 Vnto þaire schippes ful hastily  
 Als men þat war in dede doghty.  
 Þai fand þe galay men grete wane  
 A hundereth euer ogaynes ane;  
 Þe Inglis men put þam to were 95  
 Ful baldly, with bow and spere;  
 Þai slogh þare of þe galaies men  
 Euer sixty ogaynes ten,  
 Þat sum ligges ȝit in þat mire  
 All heuidles, with owten hire, 100  
 Þe Inglis men war armed wele  
 Both in yren and in stele;  
 Þai faght ful fast both day and night  
 Als lang als þam lasted might;  
 Bot galay men war so many 105  
 Þat Inglis men wex all very:  
 Help þai soght, bot þare come nane; [f. 53 a<sup>2</sup>.  
 Þan vnto God þai made þaire mane.  
 Bot, sen þe time þat God was born  
 Ne a hundreth ȝere biforn 110

84. *mens*] *mennes* S.      91. *ful* should be omitted.      93. *wane*] *wone* and in next line *one* S.      107. *nane*] *none* and in next line *none* S.

War neuer men better in fight  
 þan Ingliss men, whils þai had myght.  
 Bot sone all maistri gan þai mis.  
 God bring þaire saules vntill his blis,  
 And God assoyl þam of þaire sin 115  
 For þe gude will þat þai war in. Amen.

Listens now, and leues me,  
 Who so lifes þai sall se  
 þat it mun be ful dere boght  
 þat þir galay men haue wrought. 120  
 þai houed still opon þe flode  
 And reued pouer men þaire gude:  
 þai robbed and did mekill schame,  
 And ay bare Inglis men þe blame.  
 Now Ihesus saue all Ingland 125  
 And blis it with his haly hand. Amen.

## IV.

**E**DWARD oure cumly king  
 In Braband has his woning,  
 With mani cumly knight;  
 And in þat land, trewly to tell,  
 Ordanis he still for to dwell, 5  
 To time he think to fight.

Now God þat es of mightes maste  
 Grant him grace of þe Haly Gaste

122. *gude*] *gode* S. 125. *Ihesus*] *ihc* MS. *Ingland*] *Ingeland* S.

3. *cumly* is probably a mistaken repetition from the first line.

5. *Ordanis*] *Ordaynes* S.

His heritage to win.  
 And Mari moder, of mercy fre, 10  
 Saue oure king and his menȝe  
 Fro sorow, and schame and syn.  
 Þus in Braband has he bene,  
 Whare he bifore was seldom sene,  
 For to proue þaire iapes; 15  
 Now no langer wil he spare,  
 Bot vnto Fraunce fast will he fare,  
 To confort him with grapes.  
 ffurth he ferd into France;  
 God saue him fro mischance, 20  
 And all his company.  
 Þe nobill duc of Braband  
 With him went into þat land,  
 Redy to lif or dy.  
 Þan þe riche floure de lice 25  
 Wan þare ful litill prise;  
 Fast he fled for ferde.  
 Þe right aire of þat cuntre  
 Es cumen, with all his knightes fre: [f. 53 b.  
 To schac him by þe berd. 30  
 Sir Philip þe Valayse,  
 Wit his men in þo dayes,  
 To batale had he thoght:  
 He bad his men þam puruay,

12. R. omits the first *and*. 19. *ferd*] *fered* S. But *ferd* is practically dissyllabic. 20. *God*] *Iesus* S. 22. S. inserts *als* after *duc*. 25. *delice* in one word MS. 28. *right*] perhaps better *rightwis*, see vii. 113. 32. *in*] perhaps *into*, comp. Wyntoun, v. 3153. 34. The repetition of *his men* (after v. 32) is suspicious. S. reads *He bad þam þam puruay*: perhaps, *He bad þis menȝe þam puruay*, see iv. 11, and Horst. Barb. ii. 179/178.



With owten lenger delay, 35  
 Bot he ne held it noght.  
 He broght folk ful grete wone,  
 Ay seuyn oganis one,  
 Pat ful wele wapnid were :  
 Bot sone when he herd ascry 40  
 Pat king Edward was nere parby,  
 Pan durst he noght cum nere.  
 In pat morning fell a myst,  
 And when oure Ingliss men it wist,  
 It changed all paire chere ; 45  
 Oure king vnto God made his bone,  
 And God sent him gude confort sone,  
 Pe weder wex ful clere.  
 Oure king and his men held pe felde  
 Stalwortly, with spere and schelde, 50  
 And thoght to win his right,  
 With lordes and with knightes kene  
 And oþer doghty men bydene,  
 Pat war ful frek to fight.  
 When sir Philip of France herd tell 55  
 Pat king Edward in feld walld dwell,  
 Pan gayned him no gle ;  
 He traisted of no better bote,  
 Bot both on hors and on fote  
 He hasted him to fle. 60

35. *lenger*] *leng* S. 37. *broght*] *bcoght* MS. 40. *when*] So R. *when* MS. 43. *morning*] *mornig* MS., perhaps a genuine form, see *murnig*, vii. 119; viii. 2; so also in this MS. *fagenig*, f. 28 a<sup>1</sup>; *biginnig*, f. 50 b<sup>1</sup>; and other words in *nig*. Comp., too, in other Northern pieces *murnig*, Horst. A. L. ii. 112/11; and *jernig*, id. 113/44; *þarnige*, Horst. Barb. i. 135/839, 153/916. 44. *Ingliss*] *igliss* MS. 45. *shanged* MS. 50. *Stalwortly*] *Stakworthly* R. 55. *sir* written above the line in MS. 56. *walld*] *whildd* S. 57. *gayned*] perhaps *gamed*, see note.

It semid he was ferd for strokes  
 Wherf he did fell his grete okes  
 About his paulyoune;  
 Abated was pan all his pride,  
 For langer pare durst he noght bide, 65  
 His bost was broght all doune.

Pe king of Beme had cares colde,  
 Pat was ful hardy and bolde  
 A stede to vmstride.  
*He and* pe king als of Nauerne 70  
 War faire feld in pe ferene  
 Paire heuiddes for to hide.

And leues wele it es no lye,  
 Pe felde hat flemangrye  
 Pat king Edward was in, 75  
 With princes pat war stif ande bolde  
 And dukes pat war doghty tolde [f. 53 b<sup>2</sup>.  
 In batayle to bigin.

Pe princes pat war riche on raw  
 Gert nakers strike, and trumpes blaw. 80  
 And made mirth at paire might:  
 Both alblast and many a bow  
 War redy railed opon a row,  
 And ful frek for to fight.

Gladly pai gaf mete and drink 85  
 So pat pai suld pe better swink

68. *ful*] so R, *fur* MS. 69. S. inserts *for* after *stede*. 70. *He*  
*and* supplied by R. 71. *feld in pe* are in smaller writing than  
 the other words, as if they had been inserted afterwards. S. reads  
*felid*: perhaps *War fain for fered in pe ferene*, see note. 74. *felde*  
*hat*] *feld it hat* S. 79. *raw*] *row* and in next line *blow* S.

þe wight men þat þar ware.  
 Sir Philip of Fraunce fled for dout,  
 And hied him hame with all his rout:  
 Coward, God giff him care.

90

ffor þare þan had þe lely flowre  
 Lorn all halely his honowre,  
 þat sogat fled for ferd;  
 Bot oure king Edward come ful still,  
 When þat he trowed no harm him till,  
 And keped him in þe berde.

95

## V.

Lithes and þe bataill I sal bigyn  
 Of Inglish men & Normandes in þe Swyn.

**M**INOT with mowth had menid to make  
 Suth sawes & sad for sum mens sake;  
 þe wordes of sir Edward makes me to wake,  
 Wald he salue vs sone mi sorow suld slake;  
 War mi sorow slaked sune wald I sing:  
 When God will sir Edward sal vs bute bring.

5

Sir Philip þe Valas cast was in care;  
 And said sir Hugh Kyret to Flandres suld fare,  
 And haue Normondes inogh to leue on his lare,  
 All Flandres to brin and mak it all bare;  
 Bot, vnkind coward, wo was him þare:  
 When he sailed in þe Swin it sowed him sare;  
 Sare it þam smerted þat ferd out of ffrance;  
 þare lered Inglish men þam a new daunce.

10

2. *mens*] *mennes* S.

þe buriase of Bruge ne war noȝht to blame ; 15  
 I pray Iheſu ſaue þam fro ſin and fro ſchame,  
 For þai war ſone at þe Sluſe all by a name,\*  
 Whare many of þe Normandes tok mekill grame.

When Bruges and Ipyre hereof herd tell,  
 Þai ſent Edward to wit þat was in Arwell ; 20  
 Þan had he no liking langer to dwell,  
 He haſted him to þe Swin with ſergantes ſnell,  
 To mete with þe Normandes þat fals war & fell,  
 Þat had ment if þai might al Flandres to quell.

King Edward vnto ſail was ful ſune dight 25  
 With erles and barons and many kene knight :  
 Þai come byfor Blankebergh on Saint Ions night ; [f. 54 a<sup>1</sup>.  
 Þat was to þe Normondes a well ſary ſight.  
 3it trumped þai and daunced with torches ful bright,  
 In þe wilde waniand was paire hertes light. 30

Opon þe morn efter, if I ſuth ſay,  
 A meri man, ſir Robard out of Morlay,  
 At half eb in þe Swin ſoght he þe way ;  
 Þare lered men þe Normandes at bukler to play ;  
 Helpid þam no prayer þat þai might pray ; 35  
 Þe wrechis er wonnen paire wapin es oway.

þe Erle of Norhamton helpid at þat nede,  
 Als wiſe man of wordes and worthli in wede,  
 Sir Walter þe Mawnay, God gif him mede,  
 Was bold of body in batayl to bede. 40

17. *aname* in one word MS. 22. *sergantes*] *seriantes* S. 23.  
*Normandes*] *Nomandes* MS. 36. *er*] so S. *es* MS., due probably  
 to the following *es*. 37. *Norhamton*] *Norh̄mton* (= *norhamton*)  
 MS. 40. S. ſupplies *man* after *bold* ; perhaps *burne*.

þe duc of Lankaster was dight for to driue,  
 With mani mody man þat thocht for to thriue,  
 Wele & stalworthly stint he þat striue,  
 þat few of þe Normandes left pai oliue ;  
     Fone left pai oliue bot did þam to lepe ; 45  
     Men may find by þe flode a 'C' on hepe.

Sir Wiliam of Klington was eth for to know ;  
 Mani stout bachilere broght he on raw.  
 It semid with paire schoting als it war snaw ;  
 þe bost of þe Normandes broght pai ful law ; 50  
     paire bost was abated and paire mekil pride,  
     Fer might þai noght fle bot þare bud þam bide.

þe gude Erle of Glowceter, God mot him glade,  
 Broght many bold men with bowes ful brade ;  
 To biker with þe Normandes baldely þai bade 55  
 And in middes þe flode did þam to wade ;  
     To wade war þo wretches casten in þe brim ;  
     þe kaitefs come out of France at lere þam to swim.

I prays Iohn Badding als one of þe best ;  
 Faire come he sayland out of þe suthwest, 60  
 To proue of þa Normandes was he ful prest,  
 Till he had foghten his fill he had neuer rest.

Iohn of Aile of þe Sluys with scheltron ful schene  
 Was comen into Cagent, cantly and kene,  
 Bot sone was his trumping turned to tene ; 65  
 Of him had sir Edward his will als I wene.

þe schipmen of Ingland sailed ful swith  
 þat none of þe Normandes fro þam might skriith.

46. .C.] *hundreth* S.54. *boldmen* in one word MS.67. *swith*] *swithe* and in the next lines *skrithe*, *kithe* S.

Who so kouth wele his craft þare might it kith:  
Of al þe gude þat þai gat gaf þai no tithe.

70

Two hundreth and mo schippes on þe sandes  
Had oure Inglis men won with þaire handes;  
þe kogges of Ingland war broght out of bandes,  
And also þe Cristofir þat in þe streme standes;

In þat stound þai stode, with stremers ful still, [f. 54 a 75

Til þai wist full wele sir Edwardes will.

Sir Edward, oure gude king wurthi in wall  
Faght wele on þat flude, faire mot him fall;  
Als it es custom of king to confort þam all  
So thanked he gudely þe grete and þe small,

80

He thanked þam gudely, God gif him mede,

þus come oure king in þe Swin till þat gude dede.

þis was þe bataile þat fell in þe Swin,  
Whare many Normandes made mekill din;  
Wele war þai armed vp to þe chin;  
Bot God and sir Edward gert þaire boste blin,

85

þus blinned þaire boste, als we wele ken:

God assoyle þaire sawls, sais all, Amen.

## VI.

Herkins how king Edward lay  
With his men bifor Tournay.

TOWRENAY, þow has ticht  
To timber trey and tene

74. also] als S.

84. Normandes] r added above the line MS.

1. Towrenay] Tournay S. Between the syllables bearing the principal and the secondary accent an e or o is often heard in conjunction with

A bore, with brenis bright  
 Es broght opou 3owre grene:  
 Pat es a semely sight, 5  
 With schilterouns faire and schene:  
 pi domes day es dight,  
 Bot pou be war, I wene.

When all yowre wele es went  
 3owre wo wakkins ful wide, 10  
 To sighing er 3e sent  
 With sorow on ilka syde :  
 Ful rewofful es 3owre rent,  
 All redles may 3e ride ;  
 pe harmes pat 3e haue hent 15  
 Now may 3e hele and hide.

Hides and helis als hende,  
 For 3e er cast in care ;  
 Ful few find 3e 3owre frende  
 For all 3owre frankis fare. 20  
 Sir Philip sall 3ow schende,  
 Whi leue 3e at his lare ?  
 No bowes now thar 3ow bende ;  
 Of blis 3e er all bare.

*r* or *l*. In this MS. it is sometimes written where it must be slurred over in scansion, *Tourenay*, *ferene*, iv. 71; *semely*, vi. 5. In other places where the metre requires it it is not written, *Aremouth*, iii. 76; *Ingeland*, iii. 2. M.'s *Arwell* is Chaucer's *Orewelle*. Comp. also *coroun*, ix. 46, elsewhere *croun*. 3. *bore* only here and vii. 21, but *bare* sixteen times. 6. *Schilterouns*] in v. 63 *scheltron*: the scribe has followed the analogy of Romance words like *resoun*, *soun*. 15. *harmes*] *harms* S.; rather omit *pat*, *harmes* being dissyllabic here and in ii. 26, vi. 43. 16. *hele*] perhaps *holde*, and in 17 *holdis*, see note. 21. *sall* occurs sixteen times; *sal* only at v. 6, vi. 33, viii. 19. 23. *No bowes er for 3ow bende* S.; better perhaps, *3owre bowes now er unbende*, see note.

All bare er 3e of blis, 25  
 No bost may be 3owre bote,  
 All mirthes mun 3e mis,  
 Oure men sall with 3ow mote,  
 Who sall 3ow clip and kys,  
 And fall 3owre folk to fote: 30  
 A were es wroght, i-wis,  
 3owre walles with to wrote.

Wrote 3ai sal 3owre dene, [f. 54 b<sup>1</sup>.  
 Of dintes 3e may 3ow dowt;  
 3owre biginges sall men brene, 35  
 And breke 3owre walles about.  
 Ful redles may 3e ren,  
 With all 3owre rewful rout;  
 With care men sall 3ow ken  
 Edward 3owre lord to lout. 40

To lout 3owre lord in land  
 With list men sall 3ow lere;  
 3owre harmes cumes at hand,  
 Als 3e sall hastily here.  
 Now frendschip suld 3e fande 45  
 Of sir Philip 3owre fere,  
 To bring 3ow out of band,  
 Or 3e be broght on bere.

On bere when 3e er broght,  
 3an cumes Philip to late, 50  
 He hetes, and haldes 3ow noght,  
 With hert 3e may him hate.

30. And] all S.  
 so R. 3ow MS.

31. i-wis] I wis MS.

50. 3an] 3en S.; the word occurs sixteen times, and invariably 3an.



A bare now has him soght  
 Till Turnay þe right gate,  
 þat es ful wele bithoght 55  
 To stop Philip þe strate,  
 Ful still.  
 Philip was fain he moght  
 Graunt sir Edward his will.

If ȝe will trow my tale, 60  
 A duke tuke leue þat tide,  
 A Braban brwed þat bale,  
 He bad no langer bide;  
 Giftes grete and smale  
 War sent him on his side; 65  
 Gold gert all þat gale  
 And made him rapely ride  
 Till dede:

In hert he was vnhale;  
 He come þare moste for mede. 70

King Edward, frely fode,  
 In Fraunce he will noght blin.  
 To mak his famen wode  
 þat er wonand þarein.  
 God, þat rest on rode 75  
 For sake of Adams syn,  
 Strenkith him main & mode  
 His reght in France to win  
 And haue.

God grante him graces gode, 80  
 And fro all sins vs saue. Amen.

54. *Till*] *Til* S.; always *till* in MS.  
*þe strate*: *ful still*, so also 67, 68, and 78, 79.

67. *rapely*] *raply* S.

74. *þarein*] *þare* in MS. *þarin* S.

56. In MS. *to stop philip*  
 62. *brwed*] *brewd* S.

## VII.

How Edward at Hogges vnto land wan  
And rade thurgh France or euer he blan.

MEN may rede in romance right [f. 54 b<sup>2</sup>.  
Of a grete clerk þat Merlin hight;  
Ful many bokes er of him wreten,  
Als þir clerkes wele may witten;  
And ȝit in many priue nokes 5  
May men find of Merlin bokes.  
Merlin said þus with his mowth,  
Out of þe north into þe sowth  
Suld cum a bare ouer þe se  
Þat suld mak many man to fle; 10  
And in þe se, he said ful right,  
Suld he schew ful mekill might;  
And in France he suld bigin  
To mak þam wrath þat er þarein;  
Vntill þe se his taile reche sale 15  
All folk of France to mekill bale.  
Þus haue I mater for to make,  
For a nobill prince sake:  
Help me, God, my wit es thin,  
Now Laurence Minot will bigin. 20

A bore es broght on bankes bare  
With ful batail bifor his brest;  
For Iohn of France will he noght spare  
In Normondy to tak his rest,

Title, l. 2. *thurgh*] *thurgh* MS.

3. *wreten*] *writen*, and in next line *witen* S. 5, 6. *ȝit* seems to  
mark these two lines as an interpolation of the scribe. 14. *wrath*]  
*wroth* S. *þarein*] *parin* S. 18. *prince*] *princes* S.; the *s* is  
dropped because another *s* follows.

With princes þat er *proper* and *prest*: 25  
 Alweldand God of mightes maste,  
 He be his beld, for he mai best,  
 Fader and Sun and Haly Gaste.  
 Haly Gaste, þou gif him grace,  
 Þat he in gude time may bigin, 30  
 And send to him both might & space  
 His heritage wele for to win;  
 And sone assoyl him of his sin,  
 Hende God, þat heried hell.  
 For France now es he entred in, 35  
 And þare he dightes him for to dwell.  
 He dwelled þare, þe suth to tell,  
 Opon þe coste of Normondy;  
 At Hogges fand he famen fell  
 Þat war all ful of felony: 40  
 To him þai makked grete maistri,  
 And proued to ger þe bare abyde;  
 Thurgh might of God & mild Mari  
 Þe bare abated all þaire *pride*.  
 Mekill *pride* was þare in *prese*, 45  
 Both on pencell and on plate,  
 When þe bare rade, with outen rese,  
 Vnto Cane þe graythest gate.  
 Þare fand he folk bifor þe ȝate [f. 55 a<sup>1</sup>.  
 Thretty thowsand stif on stede: 50  
 Sir Iohn of France come al to late,  
 Þe bare has gert þaire sides blede.  
 He gert þam blede if þai war bolde,  
 For þare was slayne and wounded sore

Thretty thowsand, trewly tolde, 55

Of pitaile was pare mekill more;

Knightes war pare wele two score

Pat war new dubbed to pat dance,

Helm and heuyd pai haue forlore:

Pan misliked Iohn of France. 60

More misliking was pare pen,

For fals treson alway pai wrought;

Bot, fro pai met with Inglis men,

All paire bargan dere pai boght.

Inglis men with site pam soght 65

And hastily quit pam paire hire;

And at þe last forgat pai noght,

Þe toun of Cane pai sett on fire.

Pat fire ful many folk gan fere,

When pai se brandes o-ferrum flye; 70

Þis haue pai wonen of þe were,

Þe fals folk of Normundy.

I sai ȝow lely how pai lye

Dongen doun all in a daunce;

Paire frendes may ful faire forþi 75

Pleyn pam vntill Iohn of France.

ffranche men put pam to pine

At Cressy, when pai brak þe brig;

Pat saw Edward with both his ine,

Pan likid him no langer to lig. 80

Ilk Inglis man on opers rig

Ouer pat water er pai went;

To batail er pai baldly big,

With brade ax and with bowes bent.

61. *misliking*] *misliking* MS.

65. *inglismen* in one word MS.

70. *o ferrum* MS. and so in l. 89. 71. *wonen*] *wonnen* S. 72. *fals*] *false* S.

80. *langer*] better read with S *leng*.

With bent bowes þai war ful bolde 85  
 For to fell of þe Frankisch men;  
 þai gert þam lig with cares colde;  
 Ful sari was sir Philip þen.

He saw þe toun o-ferrum bren,  
 And folk for ferd war fast fleand; 90  
 þe teres he lete ful rathly ren  
 Out of his eghen, I vnderstand.

þan come Philip ful redy dight  
 Toward þe toun with all his rowt,  
 With him come mani a kumly knight, 95  
 And all vmset þe bare about.

þe bare made þam ful law to lout, [f. 55 a<sup>2</sup>.  
 And delt þam knokkes to paire mede;  
 He gert þam stumbill þat war stout,  
 þare helpid nowþer staf ne stede. 100

Stedes strong bileuid still  
 Biside Cressy opon þe grene;  
 Sir Philip wanted all his will,  
 þat was wele on his sembland sene.  
 With spere and schelde and helmis schene 105  
 þe bare þan durst þai noght habide:  
 þe king of Beme was cant and kene,  
 Bot þare he left both play and pride.

Pride in præse ne prais I noght  
 Omang þir princes prowde in pall; 110  
 Princes suld be wele bithoght,  
 When kinges þam till counsail call.

85. *bowes bent*] *bended bows* S. 112. *Kinges suld* MS.; *suld* is clearly due to the preceding line, as ten Brink points out in Scholle, p. 45. *till*] *tyll* R. *toll* MS.

If he be rightwis king, þai sall  
 Maintene him both night and day,  
 Or els to lat his frendschip fall 115  
 On faire manere, and fare oway.

Oway es all þi wele, i-wis,  
 Franche man, with all þi fare;  
 Of murning may þou neuer mys,  
 For þou ert cumberd all in care: 12  
 With speche ne moght þou neuer spare  
 To speke of Ingliss men despite;  
 Now haue þai made þi biging bare,  
 Of all þi catell ertou quite.

Quite ertou, þat wele we know, 125  
 Of catell and of drewris dere;  
 Þarfore lies þi hert ful law,  
 Þat are was blith als brid on brere.  
 Inglis men sall ȝit to ȝere  
 Knok þi palet or þou pas, 130  
 And mak þe polled like a frere:  
 And ȝit es Ingland als it was.

Was þou noght, Franceis, with þi wapin  
 Bitwixen Cressy and Abuyle?  
 Whare þi felaws lien and gapin, 135  
 For all paire treget and paire gile.  
 Bisschoppes war pare in þat while  
 Þat songen all withouten stole:  
 Philip þe Valas was a file,  
 He fled and durst noght tak his dole. 140

115. *els to*] *elles* S.      117. *i-wis*] *I wis* MS.      119. *murning*] *murnig* MS., see iv. 43, note.

Men delid þare ful mani a dint  
 Omang þe gentill Geneuayse;  
 Ful many man þaire liues tint  
 For luf of Philip þe Valays.  
 Vnkind he was and vncurtayse, [f. 55 b<sup>1</sup>. 145  
 I prais no thing his puruiance;  
 Þe best of France and of Artayse  
 War al to-dongyn in þat daunce.  
 Þat daunce with treson was bygun  
 To trais þe bare with sum fals gyn: 150  
 Þe Franche men said, All es wun,  
 Now es it tyme þat we bigin,  
 For here es welth inogh to win,  
 To make vs riche for euermore:  
 Bot, thurgh þaire armure thik and thin 155  
 Slaine þai war, and wounded sore.  
 Sore þan sighed sir Philip;  
 Now wist he neuer what him was best,  
 For he es cast down with a trip:  
 In Iohn of France es all his trest, 160  
 For he was his frend faithfulest,  
 In him was full his affiance:  
 Bot sir Edward wald neuer rest,  
 Or þai war feld þe best of France.  
 Of France was mekill wo, i-wis, 165  
 And in Paris þa high palays:  
 Now had þe bare with mekill blis  
 Bigged him bifor Calais.

142. *Geneuayse*] *a* corrected out of *e* MS. 148. *to-dongyn*] *alto*  
*dongyn* MS. 154. *euermore*] *euermare*; and in 156, *sare* S.; but see  
 vii. 54, 57, 59. 160. *es*] *was* S. 165. *i-wis*] *I wis* MS. 166.  
*þa*] *the* R.

Heres now how þe romance sais  
 How sir Edward, oure king with croune, 170  
 Held his sege bi nightes and dais  
 With his men bifor Calays toune.

## VIII. [VII b.]

How Edward als þe romance sais  
 Held his sege bifor Calais.

CALAYS men, now mai 3e care,  
 And murning mun 3e haue to mede;  
 Mirth on mold get 3e no mare;  
 Sir Edward sall ken 3ow 3owre crede.  
 Whilum war 3e wight in wede 5  
 To robbing rathly for to ren;  
 Mend 3ow sone of 3owre misdede;  
 3owre care es cumen, will 3e it ken.  
 Kend it es how 3e war kene  
 Al Inglis men with dole to dere; 10  
 Paire gudes toke 3e al bidene,  
 No man born wald 3e forbere;  
 3e spared noght with swerd ne spere  
 To stik þam and paire gudes to stele;  
 With wapin and with ded of were 15  
 Þus haue 3e wonnen werldes wele.  
 Weleful men war 3e, i-wis,  
 Bot fer on fold sall 3e noght fare;  
 A bare sal now abate 3owre blis [f. 55 b².  
 And wirk 3ow bale on bankes bare; 20

2. *murning*] *murnig* MS.  
 17. *i-wis*] *I wis* MS.

11. *albidene* in one word MS.



He sall ȝow hunt als hund dose hare  
 pat in no hole sall ȝe ȝow hide ;

For all ȝowre speche will he noght spare  
 Bot bigges him right by ȝowre side.

Biside ȝow here ȝe bare bigins 25

To big his boure in winter tyde ;  
 And all bi tyme takes he his ines

With semly sergantes him biside.

ȝe word of him walkes ful wide ;  
 Ihesu saue him fro mischance. 30

In bataill dar he wele habide  
 Sir Philip and sir Iohn of France.

ȝe Franche men er fers and fell  
 And mase grete dray when ȝai er dight ;  
 Of ȝam men herd slike tales tell 35

With Edward think ȝai for to fight,  
 Him for to hald out of his right

And do him treson with ȝaire tales ;  
 ȝat was ȝaire purpos day and night  
 Bi counsail of ȝe Cardinales. 40

Cardinales with hattes rede

War fro Calays wele thre myle ;  
 ȝai toke ȝaire counsail in ȝat stede  
 How ȝai might sir Edward bigile.

ȝai lended ȝare bot litill while 45  
 Till Franche men to grante ȝaire grace ;

Sir Philip was funden a file,  
 He fled and faght noght in ȝat place.

In ȝat place ȝe bare was blith,  
 For all was funden ȝat he had soght : 50

Philip þe Valas fled ful swith  
 With þe batail þat he had broght.  
 For to haue Calays had he thocht  
 All at his ledeing loud or still;  
 Bot all þaire wiles war for noght,  
 Edward wan it at his will.

55

## [VII c.]

Lystens now, and ȝe may lere,  
 Als men þe suth may vnderstand,  
 Þe knightes þat in Calais were  
 Come to sir Edward sare wepeand,  
 In kirtell one and swerd in hand  
 And criéd, Sir Edward, þine *we* are,  
 Do now, lord, bi law of land  
 Þi will with vs for euermare.

60

Þe nobill burgase and þe best  
 Come vnto him to haue þaire hire;

65

Þe comun puple war ful prest  
 Rapes to bring about þaire swire :

[f. 56 a<sup>1</sup>.

Þai said all, Sir Philip oure syre,  
 And his sun, sir Iohn of France,

70

Has left vs ligand in þe mire  
 And broght vs till þis doleful dance.

Oure horses þat war faire and fat  
 Er etin vp ilkone bidene;

Haue we nowþer conig ne cat  
 Þat þai ne er etin and hundes kene.

75

All er etin vp ful clene,  
 Es nowther leuid biche ne whelp,

62. *we* added by R., but the MS. is perhaps right.  
*þan said þai all, Philip oure syre.*

69. Perhaps

þat es wele on oure sembland sene,  
 And þai er fled þat suld vs help. 80  
 A knight þat was of grete renowne,  
 Sir Iohn de Viene was his name,  
 He was wardaine of þe toune,  
 And had done Ingland mekill schame.  
 For all þaire boste þai er to blame, 85  
 Ful stalworthly þare haue þai streuyn;  
 A bare es cumen to mak þam tame,  
 Kayes of þe toun to him er gifen.  
 Þe kaies er ȝolden him of þe ȝate,  
 Lat him now kepe þam if he kun; 90  
 To Calais cum þai all to late,  
 Sir Philip and sir Iohn his sun.  
 Al war ful ferd þat þare ware fun;  
 Þaire leders may þai barely ban.  
 All on þis wise was Calais won; 95  
 God saue þam þat it so-gat wan.

## IX.

Sir Dauld had of his men grete loss  
 With sir Edward at þe Neuil cross.

SIR Dauld þe Bruse · was at distance,  
 When Edward þe Baliolfe · rade with his lance;  
 Þe north end of Ingland · teched him to daunce,  
 When he was met on þe more · with mekill mischance.  
 Sir Philip þe Valayse · may him noght avance; 5  
 Þe flowres þat faire war · er fallen in ffraunce,

IX. This poem and the next two are written in half lines in the MS.  
 the raised dot indicates the point of division. 86. *streuyn*] *striuyn*  
 and in 88 *giuen* S. 96. *so-gat*] *so gat* MS.

De floures er now fallen · pat fers war and fell;  
A bare with his bataille · has done þam to dwell.

Sir Daud þe Bruse<sup>1</sup> · said he suld fonde <sup>1[f. 56 a<sup>2</sup>].</sup>  
To ride thurgh all Ingland, · wald he noght wonde; 10  
At þe Westminster hall · suld his stedes stonde,  
Whils oure king Edward · war out of þe londe:  
Bot now has sir Daud · missed of his merkes  
And Philip þe Valays · with all paire grete clerkes.

Sir Philip þe Valais, · suth for to say, 15  
Sent vnto sir Daud · and faire gan him pray  
At ride thurgh Ingland · þaire fomen to flay,  
And said none es at home · to let hym þe way,  
None letes him þe way · to wende whore he will:  
Bot with schipherd stauas · fand he his fill. 20

fro Philip þe Valais · was sir Daud sent  
All Ingland to win · fro Twede vnto Trent;  
He broght mani berebag · with bow redy bent;  
þai robbed and þai reued · and held þat þai hent;  
It was in þe waniand · þat þai furth went; 25  
For couaitise of cataile · þo schrewes war schent;  
Schent war þo schrewes · and ailed vnsele,  
For at þe Neuil cros · nedes bud þam knele.

At þe ersbisschop of ȝork · now will I bigyn,  
For he may with his right hand · assoyl vs of syn; 30  
Both Dorem and Carlele · þai wald neuer blin  
þe wirschip of Ingland · with wappen to win; <sup>1[f. 56 b<sup>1</sup>].</sup>  
Mekill wirschip þai wan<sup>1</sup> · and wele haue þai waken,  
For syr Daud þe Bruse · was in þat tyme taken.

11. *Westminster*] *west minster* MS.

*Edward oure king.*

19. *whore*] *whare* S.

12. Perhaps *Whils*

17. *fomen*] *fo men* MS. *flay*] *slay* R.

When sir Dauid þe Bruse · satt on his stede, 35  
 He said of all Ingland · haued he no drede;  
 Bot hinde Iohn of Coupland, · a wight man in wede,  
 Talked to Dauid : and kend him his crede.  
 Þare was sir Dauid · so dughty in his dede,  
 Þe faire toure of Londen · haued he to mede. 40

Sone þan was sir Dauid · broght vnto þe toure,  
 And William þe Dowglas · with men of honowre ;  
 Full swith redy seruis · fand þai þare a schowre,  
 For first þai drank of þe swete · and seþin of þe sowre.

Þan sir Dauid þe Bruse · makes his mone, 45  
 Þe faire coroun of Scotland · haues he forgone ;  
 He loked furth into France, : help had he none  
 Of sir Philip þe Valais · ne ȝit of sir Iohn.

Þe pride of sir Dauid · bigon fast to slaken,  
 For he wakkind þe were : þat held him self waken ; 50  
 For Philyp þe Valaise · had he *his* brede baken,  
 And in þe toure of Londen · his ines er taken :  
 To be both in a place · þaire forward þai nomen,  
 Bot Philip fayled þare · and Dauid es cumen.

Sir Dauid þe Bruse · on þis manere 55  
 Said vnto sir Philip · al þir sawes þus sere :  
 Philip þe Valais, · þou made me be here,  
 Þis es noght þe forward<sup>1</sup> · we made are to ȝere ; <sup>¶</sup>f. 56 b<sup>2</sup>.  
 ffals es þi forward · and euyll mot þou fare,  
 For þou and sir Iohn þi son · haues kast me in care. 60

38. In one line in MS. Perhaps *Talked to sir Dauid*. 44. *sepin*  
*seuin*, or *senin* MS. ; but it is doubtful whether the latter, adopted by R.,  
 is a genuine form. A stroke makes the difference between *ŷ* (*þ*) and *ʃ*  
 in the MS. 49. Perhaps *bigon fast for to slaken*. 51. *his* not  
 in MS., see note. 53. *nomen*] *numen* S. ; perhaps *paire forward*  
*had þai numen*. 60. *þi son* seems superfluous.

þe Scottes, with paire falshede, · þus went þai about  
 For to win Ingland · whils Edward was out.  
 For Cuthbert of Dorem · haued þai no dout;  
 Þarfore at Neuēl cros · law gan þai lout,  
 Paire louted þai law · and leued allane : 65  
 Þus was Dauid þe Bruse · into þe toure tane.

## X.

How King Edward & his menþe  
 Met with þe Spaniardes in þe see.

I WALD noght spare for to speke, · wist I to spede,  
 Of wight men with wapin · and worthly in wede,  
 Þat now er driuen to dale · and ded all paire dede,  
 Þai sail in þe see-gronde · fissches to fede;  
 Fele fissches þai fede · for all paire grete fare, 5  
 It was in þe waniand · þat þai come pare.

Þai sailed furth in þe Swin · in a somers tyde,  
 With trompes and taburns · and mekill oper pride;  
 Þe word of þo weremen · walked full wide;  
 Þe gudes þat þai robbed · in holl gan þai it hide, 10  
 In holl þan þai hided · grete welthes, als I wene,  
 Of gold and of siluer · of skarlet and grene.

When þai sailed westward, · þo wight men in were,  
 Paire hurdis, paire ankers · hanged þai on here;  
 Wight men of þe west<sup>1</sup> · neghed þam nerr. <sup>1</sup>[*l. 57 a*]. 15  
 And gert þam snaper in þe snare, · might þai no ferr,

64. S. inserts *þe* before *Neuel*.

4. *see-gronde*] *see gronde* MS. 9. *weremen*] *werkmen* MS.; corrected by R. 10. *it* is omitted by R. 13-16. *were, here, nerr, ferr*] *werre, herre, nerre, ferre*, S. 14. S. inserts *and* after *hurdis*.  
 16. S. adds *fliit* from following line before *might*.

fier might þai noght flit · bot þare most þai fine,  
And þat þai bifore reued · þan most þai tyne.

Boy with þi blac berd, · I rede þat þou blin,  
And sone set þe to schriue · with sorow of þi syn; 20  
If þou were on Ingland · noght saltou win,  
Cum þou more on þat coste · þi bale sall bigin :  
    Þare kindels þi care · kene men sall þe kepe,  
    And do þe dye on a day · and domp in þe depe.

þe broght out of Bretayne · þowre custom with care, 25  
þe met with þe marchandes · and made þam ful bare;  
It es gude reson and right · þat þe euill misfare,  
When þe wald in Ingland · lere of a new lare,  
    New lare sall þe lere, · sir Edward to lout :  
    For when þe stode in þowre strenkith · þe war all to  
    stout. 30

## XI.

How gentill sir Edward with his grete engines  
Wan with his wight men þe castell of Gynes.

WAR þis winter oway · wele wald I wene  
    þat somer suld schew him · in schawes ful schene :  
Both þe lely and þe lipard · suld geder on a grene.  
Mari, haue minde of þi man, · þou whote wham I mene  
    Lady, think what I mene, · I mak þe my mone 5  
    þou wreke gude king Edward · on wikked syr Iohn.

18. *þai bifore*] *bifore þai* S.; with either reading the rhythm is faulty; perhaps, *þat þai had bifore reued* ·

on] *opon* would mend the rhythm.

19. *þou*] *þo* or *yo* MS. 21.

27. *It es resoun and right þat þe euil fare* S. *gude* is superfluous, but *misfare* seems necessary to the rhythm.

30. *strenkith*] *strenkth* S.; for the adj. of the longer form comp. '*he es a strenkithi swayn*,' MS. f. 64 a<sup>2</sup>. *allto* in one word MS.

2. *þat* is suspicious, see note.  
at f. 25 a<sup>2</sup>.

4. *whote*] *wote* S. *whyfe* occurs

Of Gynes ful gladly · now will I bigin, <sup>1</sup>[f. 57 a<sup>2</sup>.  
 We wote wele þat woning<sup>1</sup> · was wikked for to win :  
 Crist, þat swelt on þe rode · for sake of mans syn,  
 Hald þam in gude hele · þat now er þarein. 10  
 Inglis men er þarein · þe kastell to kepe ;  
 And Iohn of France es so wroth · for wo will he  
 wepe.

Gentill Iohn of Doncaster · did a ful balde dede,  
 When he come toward Gines · to ken þam paire crede ;  
 He stirt vnto þe castell · with owten any stede ; 15  
 Of folk þat he fand þare · haued he no drede,  
 Dred in hert had he none · of all he fand þare :  
 Faine war þai to fle · for all paire grete fare.

A letherin ledderr · and a lang line,  
 A small bote was parby · þat put þam fro pine ; 20  
 Þe folk þat þai fand þare · was faine for to fyne ;  
 Sone paire diner was dight ; and þare wald þai dine,  
 Þare was paire purpose · to dine and to dwell,  
 For treson of þe Franche men · þat fals war and fell. ✓

Say now, sir Iohn of France · how saltou fare? 25  
 Þat both Calays and Gynes · has kindeld þi care ;  
 If pou be man of mekil<sup>1</sup> might · lepe up on þi mare,  
 Take þi gate vnto Gines · and grete þam wele þare,  
 Þare gretes þi gestes ; and wendes with wo.  
 King Edward has wonen · þe kastell þam fro. 30

3e men of Saint Omers ; trus 3e þis tide,  
 And puttes out 3owre pauiliownes<sup>1</sup> · with 3owre mekill  
 pride ; <sup>1</sup>[f. 57 b<sup>1</sup>.

10. *pare* in MS.11. *pare* in MS.13. S. omits *ful*.30. *wonen*] *wonnen* S. *þam* is difficult ; perhaps *þe*.



Sendes efter sir Iohn of Fraunce · to stand by ȝowre  
 syde,  
 A bore es boun ȝow to biker · þat wele dar habyde,  
 Wele dar he habide · bataile to bede, 35  
 And of ȝowre sir Iohn of Fraunce · haues he no  
 drede.

God saue sir Edward his right · in euer ilka nede,  
 And he þat will noght so · euil mot he spede;  
 And len oure sir Edward · his life wele to lede,  
 Þat he may at his ending · haue heuin till his mede. 40

## A M E N.

33. S. omits *sir*. 36. *sir* is superfluous. *haues*] *haucues* MS.  
 37. S. omits *his right*; it is perhaps preferable to read *God saue  
 Edward his right*.

# NOTES.

## I.

### Halidon Hill.

It was stipulated by the treaty of Northampton in 1328 that the forfeited estates of English barons in Scotland should be restored to their former owners. The discontent which arose from the failure of the Scotch to carry out this arrangement found a pretext for action in Edward Balliol's claim to the throne of Scotland, and the expedition of the Disinherited Lords in 1332 was the result. On the last day of July in that year, Edward Balliol with a small force sailed from Ravenspur in Yorkshire, and after a difficult passage reached Kinghorn in Fife on the 6th of August. Before they could land their horses, they were attacked by the Earl of Fife with 24,000 men. They defeated the Scots and reached Dumfermline on the next day, where they rested for two days. They then marched to the river Earn, on the opposite bank of which they found the forces of the Earl of Mar, whose support they had counted on. But he was now prepared to resist them, and the English, threatened by a large force in their rear, forded the river in the night and fell on the Scotch foot in their tents, killing a large number of them. Meanwhile the cavalry who were guarding the bridges gathered and attacked Balliol's army, but they were completely routed at Gaskmoor or Dupplin Moor, with the loss of Mar, Menteith, Carrick and others. The English then occupied and fortified Perth, where they were besieged by the rallied fugitives of Dupplin and others under Archibald Douglas, Earl of Dunbar. In the meantime John Crab, 'pirata crudelissimus,' came with ten well-appointed Flemish ships from Berwick to attack the English vessels at Dundee, but he was defeated and his ships taken or destroyed (Rot. Scacc. Scot. i., p. cxlii., Knyghton, pp. 2561-2). Thereupon the siege of Perth was raised, and the principal Scotch leaders having submitted, Balliol was crowned King of Scotland. The adherents of David rising against him were defeated at Roxburgh bridge. The false security produced by the defeat of this attempt led Edward Balliol to dismiss most of his English forces, and he was himself expelled by a sudden rising at Annan under the Earl of Moray and Archibald Douglas on Dec. 13, 1332 (see ll. 41-44). With Edward the Third's permission he raised 10,000 men

in England and laid siege to Berwick on March 12, 1333. The Scots, hoping to draw him off, invaded England on the 23rd of March, but they were defeated two days after by Antony de Lucy, who captured William Douglas, the leader of the expedition, and recovered much booty. After Easter, Edward the Third arrived before Berwick. The Scots in the town, being hard pressed, procured a truce on condition of giving up the place if it were not relieved within fifteen days. An attempt to relieve the town failed, and the garrison still holding out after the stipulated time, one of their hostages was hanged before the eyes of the besieged. The Scots again tried to divert Edward from the siege, but they burnt Tweedmouth and besieged Queen Philippa in the strong fortress of Bamborough to no purpose. The men of Berwick then offered to give up the town by the following Monday if the Scots failed to relieve it by throwing into it a force of two hundred men with the loss of less than ten of their number. In the attempt to accomplish this the battle of Halidon Hill was fought, on Monday, July 19, 1333. (*Gesta Edwardi Terti in Chronicles of Edw. I. and Edw. II., Rolls Series. Knyghton. Walsingham. Rot. Scacc. Scot. vol. i.*)

Bierbaum (p. 13) thinks that the first two songs were written not earlier than 1339 or 1340. He sees in l. 23 a reference to the retreat of the French at Flamengerie in 1339. But as this isolates the line, which clearly refers to the ships of l. 19, he offers as an alternative argument that there is no record of French vessels coming to the help of Scotland till 1338. But the reference in the stanza is clearly to the event recorded by Nangis and quoted in the note on l. 19. He further relies on Mätzner's suggestion that l. 66, and ii. l. 24, refer to the burning of Dundee in 1335. But it is just as satisfactorily explained by the fact that in 1334 all Scotland, with the exception of three or four strongholds, was in the hands of the English; or it may be regarded as an allusion to the defeat of Crab's expedition before Dundee. Besides, the earl of Moray was captured in 1335 by William of Prestfen, the Warden of Jedburgh (*Hemingburgh, ii. p. 311*); and the poet would hardly have failed to rejoice at this when mentioning his success at Annan in 1332 (ll. 41-44). There is then nothing in the poems against the natural assumption that they were written immediately after Halidon Hill. The allusion in l. 83 to the king's speech appeals to the still fresh recollection of the poet's hearers.

As in vii. and the first sections of vi. and viii., an emphatic word of the last line of each stanza is repeated in the first line of the next. This linking also occurs in the *Awntyrs of Arthure*, and between the last long line and the first short one in each verse of *Sayne Johne*, printed in Horstmann, A. L., ii. p. 467, and in *Religious Pieces*, E. E. T. S. no. 26, p. 87. The opening lines of a Hymn at p. 75 of the latter collection may be

quoted here for their striking resemblance to the first stanza of this poem. 'Fadir and Sone and Haly Gaste, | Lorde to þe I make my mone, | Stedfaste kyng of myghtes maste, | Alleweldand Gode sittand in trone, | I praye þe Lorde, þat þou þe haste | To forgyffe þat I hafe mysdone.' The half verse at the end by way of epilogue is noteworthy.

Another poem on Halidon Hill is quoted in Ritson's notes from MS. Harl. 4690. It is reprinted in the Appendix, piece i.

1. in trone. For the preposition comp. 'And thankyd god, that syts in trone,' Erl of Tolous, 461.

4. bute of all my bale, a very common alliterative formula. Comp. 'This is boyte of oure baylle | Good holsom aylle,' Towneley Plays, p. 90; 'Mi bale þou fond to bet,' Sir Tristrem, 3307; 'She is the bote of all my bale,' Skelton, i. 293/2096; 'A blicht (? blitht) blenk of hir vesage bair | Of baill his bute mycht be,' Laing, Ancient Scot. Poetry, 224/59; Cursor, 105, 4766, 14415, 23951; Sir Amadace, xvii; Sir Isumbras, 764; Amis, 2352; and Maetz. under *beten* and *bot*.

8, 9. in þis dale, on this earth, this vale of misery: Hampole's 'dym dulful dale | þat es ful of sorow and bale,' 1166, 7. Comp. also 'þan man hem telled soþe tale | Of blisses dune, of sorwes dale,' Gen. and Ex. 17, 19.

9. droupe and dare, a Northern alliterative formula. Comp. 'I drope, I dare, for seyng of sight | That I can se,' Towneley Plays, pp. 261, 223; 'He may droupe and dare | þat schal his troupe tyne,' Horstmann, A. L., i. 205/112, 178/387; Le bone Florence, 92-3; Morte Arthur, 4008; Rel. Ant., i. p. 78, ii. p. 9; Wright, P. Poems, i. 250. In the evolution of this phrase the usual word *droupe* has possibly replaced an earlier and misunderstood \**drouk* of which *durk* is a variant form; and *droukening* a dreamy or mased condition, as when one loses presence of mind through fear (connected with O. N. *drukna*, to be drowned, *drukinn*, drunk), is a derivative. So in Promptorium Parvulorum, p. 113, 'DARYNGE, or drowpyng (droukyng, H. droukinge, P.) Lati-tatio.' Comp. for the use of *durk*, 'I durk, I dare,' York Plays, 141/105; 'That the dere dwellys | And darkys and darys. | Alle darkis the dere and to down schowys | And for the dowte of the dede drowpys the daa,' Awntyrs of Arthure, 50-53. where Robson's text has 'Thay droupun and daren | Alle dyrkyns the dere,' Anturs of A., iv, v; 'In hope i durk and dare,' Cursor, 25444. In Towneley Plays, p. 137, 'Alas! I lurk and dare,' the scribe has probably got rid of the obsolescent word. Comp. too, 'þe men when þai þam failand feld | drowpid and war adred,' Evangelium Nichodemi, MS. Galba, E. ix. f. 58 b<sup>1</sup>; 'þai drowped and war drery,' id. f. 62 a<sup>1</sup>, where the meaning of *drouk* is clearly kept in mind. *Dare* means to lurk or cause to lurk; see the

definition from the Prompt. Parv. above; and comp. 'We dared for drede and durst noght luke.' Evan. Nich. f. 61 b<sup>2</sup>. It appears to have a secondary meaning, to stare in terror or astonishment. See Dyce, Skelton, ii. p. 379, and Notes and Queries, 1853<sup>1</sup>, p. 542.

10. *dern*, *secret*, is most likely a copyist's mistake for *derue*, terrible, injurious. The two words are frequently confused, and the same alteration improves Genesis and Exodus, 1950. So in the Bestiary, 284, Morris has *derue*, Maetzner *derne*, and the words alternate in the versions of Cursor, 19712. Comp. for the combination, 'pat derf o ded, pat fals traitur,' Cursor, 12936; Horstmann, A. L., ii. 469/125.

12. *founded first*. See *fand* and *founded* in Glossary. The scribe uses both forms in the sense 'to try' elsewhere, 'he fanded fast the childe to styng,' f. 29 b<sup>2</sup>; in Ywayne, 1495, *founde* rhymes with *stownde*. We should at first expect *fast* here, from the frequency of such passages as 'For fast i fund to fare,' Cursor, 25441; 'The fend of helle fondyd fast,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 330/73; 'To fynde a forpe faste con I fonde,' The Pearl, 150; 'fownde the fasto to fare,' Towneley Plays, p. 135; York Plays, 430/123; W. of Palerne, 1682; Bruce, i. 42; Sir Percival, 463; St. Marherete, 30/205. But *first* may refer to the indecisive campaign of Edward in 1327.

13. *frek to fare*. Comp. 'flor to fare to pere ffoos with a fryke wille,' Troy Book, 1050, 10599, the only examples of this combination I have noted. *Fresch* is also found as a variant of *frek* in this phrase; comp. 'Nis no so fresch on fote to fare,' E. E. Poems, 134/49. See also iv. 54 and note.

15. with *sides sare*, a phrase which often occurs in the romances. Comp. 'And made pere many a sore syde,' Octavian, 144/1340; 'The prynce of Aragon in they barre | With litull worshipp and sydes sare,' Torrent of Portugal, 1182, 3; 'Ys siden were sore | le sang de ly cora,' Bökdeker, Alteng. Dichtungen, 221/33; Sir Degrevant, 1328; 'pan schold y make hure sydes blede,' Sir Ferumbras, 5401, and see vii. 52.

16. *noght worth a pere*. The same comparison in Sir Ferumbras, 5721; Le bone Florence, 657; and Rowland and Otuell, 815, 'his armours ne vaylede noghte a pere.' So, 'noghte worthe a pye,' id. 1157; 'noghte worthe ane aye,' id. 222; and in 24 below, 'noght wurth a flye,' with which comp. 'Your frantick fable not worth a fly,' Skelton, i. 185/104. Comp. also Richard the Redeles, prologue, l. 73, and note.

17. A pear is more in value sometimes.

18. *Normondye*, see v. 9, note.

19. 'Hoc anno (1333) decem naves, munitæ armis et victualibus a rege Franciæ Philippo in auxilium Scotorum in civitate de Bervic per gentes regis Angliæ obsessorum missæ sunt, sed vento impellente contrario, ad portum optatum pervenire non valentes, portui de Sclusa in

'partibus Flandriæ appulerunt et ibi venditis omnibus imo quasi dissipatis, parvum aut nullum effectum habuerunt,' Nangis, avec les continuations, ed. Géraud, ii. p. 139. on *ilka syde* frequently fills up a verse without adding anything to the meaning. Comp. vi. 12; ' & hastili he sent þat tide | efter his neghhurs on ilka syde,' Galba, E. ix. f. 32 a<sup>1</sup>; also with same rhyme, f. 30 a<sup>1</sup>, f. 31 a<sup>1</sup>; ' þai tald mi banes in ilka side,' E. E. Psalter (Surtees Soc. xvi), p. 63; Hampole, 391, and ten other places; Horstmann, A. L. ii. 96/300, &c.; Richard Coer de Lion, 5087, 5156; Ywayne, 808, 923. For the Southern equivalent of the phrase, comp. 'Both knightes and barans him behelde | How comely he was on eche side,' Knight of Curtesy, 340.

21. *es noght at hide*, is frequently used by the romance writers to fill up a line. The fuller phrase is in Horn Childe (Ritson's Romances, iii. p. 283), 'In herd is nought to hide,' a variant of which 'In herte is noyte for to layne,' Sir Percival, 143, possibly suggested the beginning of this line. See Sir Tristrem, 166, note.

23. *dede habide*. Possibly the scribe has substituted *dede* for *dint* under the influence of l. 26. Comp. 'Na Sotheroun was that mycht thair dynt abid,' Wallace, vii. 1014, and see vii. 106.

24. *fare*. See vi. 20, note.

26. The same alliterative combination occurs with many variations. Comp. 'When ho schulde on the rode dye | The stones þat undur þe tempull lye | They flouen for dowe of hys dede,' The 15 tokens, 231-3 (Anglia, iii. p. 539); 'And for the dowte of the dede drowpys the daa,' Awntyrs of Arthure, 53; Richard Coer de Lion, 3013-4; 'For dowe of dede thar sall nane fle,' Bruce, xii. 488; 'As for dede of the dynt, dressit of þe fild, Troy Book 7517, 7524.

28. *Ay whils*, although, but usually it means 'as long as,' 'until,' as in 'Yis, sir, he sayd, at my power | Ay whils I [may] my armes ber,' Seuyng Sages, 2991-2; Hampole, 3238. Its use is mostly Northern.

29. Maetznér explains *mend*, moaned, complained, a meaning which will not satisfy this place. In 'And at my might I will it mend,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 113/111; Ywayne, 2204, it means 'amend,' which is also inadmissible here. It must be taken as aphetic for demeaned = behaved, as in 'But william whizes þat wistly of-seiyyen, | & demened hem dougtli dintes te dele,' William of Palerne, 1221-2. Comp. 'And mene vs with monhode maistry to wyn,' Troy, 2785 and 2773. So in 'And many oþer þat stode him by | And saw þis selkuth sight | knocked on þaire brestes & cried mercy | and mendid þam at þaire might | Of þis wonderful dede,' Galba, E. ix. f. 61 a<sup>1</sup>, *mendid* is almost certainly a mistake for *menid* in this sense. Seruit = deserved, is common; see glossary to Piers Plowman, E. E. T. S., no. 81, and Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 112/414, and cert = desert, id. i. 188/806. at *paire*

might, to the best of their ability. Comp. for the preposition, 'And þe lord þat þat beist aght | Sal þar-for ansuer at his maght,' Cursor, 6720; Rowland and Otuell, 1176.

30. besy pareabout. Comp. 'þai var richt besy ay aboute | To fynd sume get hyme to grewe,' Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 131/824-5. *About* is used alone to express the same meaning, so, 'To seint Austin he was denout | To rede his bokus he was about,' Horstmann, A. L., i. 87/1477-8.

37. now may refer to the failure of the Scotch forays into England mentioned in the introduction, but it has probably no special force.

39. dareand all for drede. Comp. note on i. 9, and add, 'For al dares for drede, withoute dynt schewed,' Gawayne, 315.

41, 42. They set great store by the Earl of Moray and many others. John Randolph (second son of Thomas Randolph who was proclaimed Regent in 1332 and died in the same year) was the leader of the sudden rising at Annan on Dec. 13, 1332, which forced Edward Balliol to fly. *Gesta Edwardi Terti*, p. 110.

43. They said the English adventurers would pay very dearly for having expelled them from their country. Comp. for this phrase, 'Fulle dere hyt schulde be boght,' Sir Eglamour, 84; 'Hit schal beo ful deore about,' Alisaunder, 4154; 'And said it suld ful dere be boght,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 107/142; Cursor, 822.

45. wordes wrought. See ii. 33, and for the alliteration comp. 'þai ditted þaire eris, for þai suld noght | Here þir wurdes þat þus war wrought,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 30/147-8.

48. Comp. 'He wold us mar and we were mo,' Towneley Plays, p. 249; York Plays, 384/208.

49. A common formula in the romances. Comp. 'Sic manassing thay me mak, forsuith, ilk þeir,' Rauf Coiljear (Laing) 200; Horstmann, A. L., ii. 467/34.

50. Mawgre is here a noun, what is displeasing, misfortune. For the alliteration, comp. 'And þeue hem myche maugre to mede | þat ony good þee wolde kenne,' Hymns to the Virgin, 65/215-6; 'mekil mawgre mot þou haue,' Galba, E. ix. f. 31 a<sup>2</sup>; Cursor, 21471; Sir Ferumbras, 618, 2577; Sir Tristrem, 2017.

54. stout on stede. See note on vii. 50.

55. Nakid is illustrated by Barbour's Bruce, xlii. 459-62 (of Bannockburn) 'And quhen thai nakit spulzeit war | That war slayfie in the battale thar, | It wes forsuith a gret ferly | Till se sammyn so feill dede ly.'

59. See ii. 10, note.

60. The 'wild Scots' are the Gaelic population of the North and West (Le Bel's 'La sauvage Escoce,' i. p. 117), the 'tame Scots' the English speaking Lowlanders. But these adjectives sometimes merely

fill up a line, 'Of Israel, bothe wyld and tame, | I have in my bondon,' Towneley Plays, p. 51.

64. wait, to look out for an opportunity to harm, and hence, to injure. Comp. 'That never he shold be nyght ne day | Wayte kyng Ermyn with treason,' Bevis of Hamtoun, f. 134 r; 'Sythene hafe I ever bene his fo | For to wayte him with wo,' Sir Perceval, 558; Cursor, 899; Erl of Tolous, 299, 683. It is also constructed with a double accusative as in 'Neewe gilours wolde waite us schame,' Hymns to the Virgin, 44 / 101; '3it schalle thai never wayt Inglond good,' Wright, P. Poems, ii. p. 127.

66. Ritson has a curious idea that, as Edward Balliol's fleet was at Dundee when he won the battle of Dupplin, this line may refer to the latter event. But see the introduction. Already in 1332, at that place ships had been allowed to depart without paying customs to the Scotch Exchequer on account of the war, and in 1334 the accounts of the chamberlain Reginald More are a blank, 'Et nihil hic de vno anno tempore regis Anglie quia ministri sui ad opus suum et ad opus Edwardi de Balliolo se totaliter de eodem anno intromiserunt,' Rot. Scacc. Scot. i. p. 448.

71. A turn of expression frequent in the romances. Comp. 'And liste no thyng of playe,' Sege off Melayne, 1254; "'Sitte downe fole," the mayd gan saye, | "Vs list to speke of no playe,"' Ipomydon, 1695-6; 'Na creatur sal þan list plai,' Cursor, 22601; Chaucer, Kn. Tale, 269.

74. A fuller alliteration is found in Cursor, 9030, 'þat bath ar funden fals and fell.'

77. John Comyn of Badenoch was murdered in the church of the Minorites at Dumfries on Feb. 10, 1306. 'Quo (Comyn) reperto coram magno altari in ecclesia fratrum dicti loci de Drumfres dictus Robertus de Broys . . . eundem protenus letali vulnere jugulavit. Ac ipso relicto et in vestibulum retro altari per conventum ejusdem ecclesiæ retracto. . . Annals of Pluscarden, i. p. 229. Hid may find an explanation in the latter sentence, but it is more likely due to the needs of the rhyme and alliteration: it is then much the same as *pwte away* in 'Swagert he all apon a day | Be slayne to dede and pwte awaye | The Denmarkys,' Wyntoun, vi. 1557-9.

80. For the alliteration comp. 'þat þus with dole to dede es dyghte,' Sege off Melayne, 557; 'And myche dole is vs dight to-day as I wene,' Troy, 9558; 'With doole haue þei dight hym to dede,' York Plays, 426/7. If the line as it stands is right, it must mean, 'are appointed that they must dwell with sorrow.' But *þat* is, at least, suspicious; we should probably read *þar* here as in Castel off Loue, 56, with the meaning 'where,' 'in which.' Comp. 'Swa es þe world here þar we duelle,' Hampole, 1241: 'That barne brynge vs to blysse þare beste es to



byde,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 467/8; 'And went whare God hyr dight to dwell,' Seuyng Sages, 19.

81. *pare*, before Berwick. *the suth to saine*, an assurance of the poet's truthfulness after the manner of the romance writers. Other formulæ of the same kind are, 'es noght at hide,' i. 21; 'leues wele it es no lye, iv. 73; 'if I suth say,' v. 31; 'þe suth to tell,' vii. 37; 'I sai þow lely,' vii. 73; 'Als men þe suth may vnderstand,' viii. 58; 'suth for to say,' ix. 15.

83. Comp. v. 79, 80. The king's speech to his troops before the battle is reported in the *Gesta Edwardi Terti*, p. 115. 'Ascenso itaque dextrario, dominus rex suos verbis affabilibus animavit, "Considerate, commilitones mei, cum quibus gentibus dimicaturi sumus isto die. Diu est quod progenitoribus nostris rebelles extiterunt. Piget itaque referre plebis et religiosorum subversiones et strages quas nostro generi pluries intulerunt. Jam, Deo propitio, dies instat ultionis, nec illorum multitudinem timeatis, quia de Domini præsidio confidentes vobiscum pares erimus in conflictu.'" on *þat plaine*. The battle of Halidon Hill was fought on rugged, hilly ground. Probably *plain* is used quite generally as we should talk of a battle-field in such a case. But we may have here a scribe's alteration of *into playn* used as in, 'Thar leyff thai tuk with conforde into playn,' Wallace, iii. 335, where the phrase means in plain (for into = in, comp. 'Hys newo in tyll ire he slewe,' Wyntoun, ii. 1262) plainly, beyond doubt, and helps to fill up the line.

84. *about a myle*, for the time it takes to go a mile. See Guy of Warwick, 2810, note, and add to the examples collected there, 'He had not slepyd but a while | Not the space of a myle,' Ipomydon, 1465-6; 'Than thai mellit on mold ane myle way and mare,' Golagrus, 1119 (Anglia, ii. p. 435); 'Ne hadde Artour bote a whyle | The mountance of a myle, | At hys table ysete,' Lybeaus, 103-5 and 1034; Cursor, 22458; Hampole, 1419.

85. *all if*, even though. Comp. 'All if þe crosse were makede of tree | The fire 3ode owtt þat come þer nee,' Sege off Melayne, 448-9; 'Al-if þe oyle war welland warme | þe appostell had þarof no harme,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 35/57-8. *If all* occurs in the same sense in id. 465/902, and in Octavian, 95/550. Other Northern forms are *al set*, Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 40/206, and *set*, Wyntoun, ii. 1452. *mekyll of maine* is an uncommon alliteration, but it is in Wallace, viii. 604.

87. *gaudes*, tricks, deceits. The combination seems specially Northern, comp. 'Bot when paire gaudes might noght gayne,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 133/133 (in Northern dialect); 'For all þair gaudis sall noght þam gayne,' York Plays, 81/248.

90. *proud in prese*, see vii. 45, note.

## II.

This poem was probably written soon after the defeat of the Scots at Halidon Hill, which Minot treats as a sufficient set-off to Bannockburn. In l. 7 the defeat at Dupplin and the subsequent occupation of Perth is referred to, while l. 15 perhaps points to the two raids over the English border in March and July, 1333, which failed to draw away Edward the Third from the siege of Berwick.

The refrain in the last line of each stanza and the linkage of the fourth and fifth line in each stanza are noteworthy.

3. *sakles*, innocent, perhaps said of the slaughter of women and children. According to Barbour, Bruce says, 'For throu me and my warraying | Of blud thar has beyne gret spilling | Quhar mony sakles man wes slayne,' xx, 173-5.

6. *3it*. Although the Scots are apparently so hopelessly beaten that the wars seem completely ended (Murimuth, p. 71), still it is necessary to guard against crafty surprises. *with*, against, as in, 'Be war with reirsuppers & of gret excess,' A Dietary (E. E. T. S., No. xxix.), 50; 'And taucht mene þat al ydolis are | Bot fendis, and with þame to be ware,' Horstmann, Barbour, i. 36/325-6. The charge against the Scots is repeated in ix. 61 and i. 87; it is extended to the French in vii. 62, 72, 136 and xi. 24. It is a commonplace in contemporary writers, 'Nam quia fidem in Scotis quasi nodum in cirpo quæsiuit.' Gesta Edw. Tertii, p. 110, and it seems to have persisted, 'And there was concludyd (1464 A.D.) a pes for xv yere with the Schottys. And (=if) the Schottys ben trewe hyt moste nedys contynu so longe, but hit ys harde for to tryste unto hem for they byn evyr founde fulle of gyle and dyssayte,' Gregory's Chronicle, p. 224. Comp. also Skelton, i. p. 186. The Scotch in turn speak of the 'false Southron,' and the French accuse the English of unfaithfulness and fickleness.

7. *St. John's town*, Perth; Froissart's *St. Jehanstone*. There is a church in it dedicated to St. John the Baptist.

9. Comp. 'Are not these Schottys | Foly and sottys, | Such boste to make, | To prate and crake,' Skelton, i. 183/29-32.

8. Comp. iv. 66, v. 50, and 'þe boste of kyng Philip fayn þan wild he felle,' Langtoft, i. 203.

10. *kindel þow care*, a not common alliterative phrase. See ii. 19, x. 23, xi. 26, and comp. 'Vr copes weore cumberous, and cundelet vs care,' Swete Susan (Laing), 224; 'Then was sche warre of the four thare | That had kyndylde all hur care,' Le bone Florence, 2016-7; 'Or he will kindill cares full calde,' Sege off Melayne, 596.

11. *crakked þowre croune*, is a favourite combination of the romance-writers. Comp. i. 59; 'Crounes thai gun crake,' Sir Tristrem,

887; 'he crakkede full many a carefull croun,' Rowland and Otuell, 1066; 'In feld when they togedur mett, | Was crakydd many a crown,' Erl of Tolous, 72; York Plays, 124/44.

13. Maetzner sees in this mention of Stirling a reference to the success of Wallace over Cressingham in 1297. *Striffin*, is Strevillyne in Bruce, i. 409, Estouvelin in Le Bel, i. p. 6. *steren* and *stout*, so 'þan þe iews ful sterne and stout,' Evangel. Nichodemi, f. 58 a<sup>2</sup>.

15. Now have they, the plunderers, gone on their raids. Comp. 'Whedyr prikket thow, pilour, þat profers so large?' Morte Arthure, 2533. Wülker, Lesebuch, p. 159 explains, They have dispersed through the country their best men, thus taking *peters* as if 'pillars of the state.' But this gives a very unusual meaning to *pricked*, which Maetzner explains correctly, rode, spurred. Maetzner however takes *peters* = pillars, and Kölbing, Eng. Stud. iv. 492, adopting this, explains, Now have they ridden round the pillars, the boundary marks, which gives a good sense, but with a meaning for *peters* difficult to parallel. Besides, *about* naturally goes closely with *priked*, as in 'And priked a-boute on palfrais fro places to maners,' P. Plowman, C. 91/160; and it is noteworthy too that *pillar* in the northern dialect at any rate has always i or y in its first syllable, so, pyllare, Wyntoun, i. 246; piller, Barbour; pyler, Hampole, 5388: piler, E. E. Psalms, 243.

18. *vnder*, defeated. Comp. 'Beleue hath mastery, and reson is under,' Pecock, Repressor, ii. p. 623; 'Than had my maysters bene al under,' Seuyn Sages, 3472; 'Bot wes at wндыre throwch thame ay,' Wyntoun, v. 4517; Lybeaus, 1307. It sometimes means, in adversity, in poor circumstances, 'A mane above is sone under by a draght of chekmate,' Rel. Ant., i. p. 271; 'Of thes frer mynours me thenkes moch wonder | That waxen are thus hauteyn that som tyme weren under,' Monum. Francis., i. p. 606. The contrasted word *above* is illustrated in Maetzner, Sprachproben, i. p. 163; *overhand* in the same sense is in Cursor, 2508. *bot gaudes*, unless when they succeed by surprises and tricks.

19. *Rughfute riueling*. Skelton inherits this topic of abuse, 'Of the out yles the roughe foted Scottes,' i. 187/170 and 194/41. The *riueling* or *rullion* is a kind of makeshift boot cut out of raw hide, made as described in the following passage: 'We go a hunting, and after that we have slain red deer we flay off the skin bye and bye, and setting of our bare foot on the inside thereof, for want of cunning shoemakers, by your grace's pardon, we play the cobblers, compassing and measuring so much thereof as shall reach up to our ancles, pricking the upper part thereof with holes, that the water may repass where it enters, and stretching it up with a strong thong of the same above our said ancles. So, and please your noble grace, we make our shoes. Therefore we,

using such manner of shoes, the rough hairy side outwards, in your grace's dominions of England we be called *rough-footed Scots*,' Elder's *Address to Henry VIII. apud Pinkerton's History*, ii. 397 (quoted in Scott's *Sir Tristrem*). Such brogues are still the common wear in Iceland. The historian of Edward's first Scottish expedition describing a camp deserted by the Scots says, 'Et si trouvasmes . . . et plus de dix mille vielz soulers tous usez, faitz de cuir tout cru, atout le poil, que ilz avoient laissé,' *Le Bel*, i. p. 70. Comp. also 'And led him (the Earl of Athole in 1335 A.D.) in tyll swylk dystres, | That at sa gret myscheff he wes, | That hys *knychtis* weryd revelynys | Off hydys, or off hart hem-mynys,' Wyntoun, viii, 4419-22; 'Also tha fand, quhairf tha had grait wounder, | Tua thousand pair of relyngis on the streit | That Erische men visis to weir vpon their feit | In steid of schone, quhilk maid war of rouch skynnis, | In falt of buklis prickt war with pynnys,' Stewart's *Boece*, iii. 267/51318-22; 'Pou getes no þing but þi riueling to hang þer inne,' Langtoft, ii. p. 282, which corresponds to Wright, *Pol. Songs*, 307/541-3; 'Thws in the hyllis levyt he, | Till the maist part off his menþe | Wes rewyn and rent; na schoyne thai had, | Bot as thai thaim off hydys mad,' Bruce, ii. 508-511. So too a 'despitefull' Englishman says to Wallace, 'Thou Scot, abyde; | Quha dewill the grathis in so gay a gyde? | Ane Ersche mantill it war thi kynd to wer; | A Scottis thewittl wndyr thi belt to ber; | Rouch rewlyngis apon thi harlot fete,' Wallace, i. 215-9.

20. *Berebag*, bag carrier. *Le Bel* explains how the Scots manage to dispense with baggage and so move about rapidly; 'Et si scevent bien qu'ilz trouveront bestes à grande abondance au pays où ilz veulent aler, pour quoy ilz ne portent aultre pourvéance [fors] que chascun porte entre sa selle et le panneau une grande plate pierre, et si trousse derrière luy une besache pleine de farine, à celle fin que quant ilz ont tant mengé de celle chair mal cuite que leurs estomacs leur semblent estre wapes (exhausted, *L. vapidus*) et fiebes, (enfeebled) ilz gettent celle plate pierre au feu, et destrempent ung petit de leur farine d'eawe, quant la pierre est eschauffée, et en font ung petit tourtel à manière d'une oulée de beguine et le mengent pour reconforter leur estomac,' i. p. 48. The place where the battle of the Standard was fought was once called *Bagmoor*, because, says a commentator on de Houedene (i. p. ci), the Scots in their flight threw away their bags. But for a more likely explanation, see Peacock's *Dialect of Manley*, p. 13.

20. *þi biging es bare*, your dwelling is empty, ruined. See vii. 123, and comp. 'Comeþ þe maister budel, brust ase a bore, | seiþ he wole mi bugging bringe ful bare,' Böddeker, A. D., 104/52-3; 'Brent vp the byggynges & full bare maden,' Troy, 1379; 'We sall spuile þow dis-pittously at the nixt springis; | Mak þow biggingis full bair, bodword

haue I brocht,' Coilhear (Laing), 901, 2; 'Maid byggyngis bar als fer as euir thai past,' Wallace, viii. 950.

22. Brug, Bruges in Flanders. The MS. reading *brig*, and probably also *burghes* in l. 25, conceals the name of this town, which appears as *bruge*, v. 15, and *bruges*, v. 19. So *Burges*, Borde's Introduction, p. 147. At P. Plowman, C. 110/278, three MSS. have *briggess*. There is abundant evidence that Bruges was a favourite resort of Scotchmen in the fourteenth century. Comp. i. 67, 8, and 'That ilke yhere on ordynawns | Oure Kyng Dawy wes send in Frawns | . . . That ilke yhere Jamys Ben, | The Byschape off Sayntandrewys then, | To Brygys past oure the se; | Hys lattyre day thare cloyd he,' Wyntoun, viii. 3645-6, 365-14 and id. ix. 2943. The actual year of David's departure was 1334 (Rot. Scacc. Scot., i. p. clviii). The Chamberlain of Scotland, Reginald More, was established at Bruges, and there the second instalment of King David's ransom was paid (id. ii. p. 21). In 1408 the earl of Mar on his way home from France lives there for some time (Wyntoun, ix. 2943-5). Murimuth indeed (p. 71) tells us that the Scotch bishops fled into France. Wülker thinks the poet consigns the unhappy Scots to a dwelling with the fiends and water sprites who live under bridges.

24. See i. 66, note.

25. *betes þe stretes*. Cotgrave (ed. 1632) explains *Batre les chemins*, To belay the way as pursetakers and boothalers doe. And again under *Pave*, *Bateur de pavex*, A pauement beater; . . . one that walkes much abroad, and riots it wheresoeuer he walkes.

32. *stanestill*. Other examples of this favourite comparison are, 'No man alyve ne schall me se | As stylye as any ston,' Launfal, 356, 7; 'I shalle make ye stille as stone, begynnar of blunder,' Towneley Plays, p. 30; 'Bot hold þam stone stille in pes at þer contre,' Langtoft, ii. p. 266; 'And still als stane þou stand,' MS. Galba, E. ix., f. 51 b<sup>1</sup>; York Plays, 146/4, Horstmann, A. D., ii. 271/219; Seunyn Sages, 3668; Myrc, 889: The Babees Book, 4/86.

33. *has wind for to spill*, indulges in empty talking. Comp. 'þat wind þou hauest ilore,' Otuel, 216; Speche þu maht spillen ant ne speden nawiht,' Juliana, p. 24; 'þer aboute 3e spilleþ breþ,' id. 82/37; 'Woman, thy wordis and thy wynde thou not waste,' York Plays, 258/121; Troy Book, 9788.

36. *get* is explained by Wright 'gain,' and Wülker quotes in support, 'Alle my get I schal yow gif agayn, bi my trawþe,' Gawayne, 1638. Maetzner suggests that it means *3et*. But the alliteration shows that the *g* is hard, and the word is imperative of *gaeten*, O.N. *gaeta*, to be on one's guard, to beware, as in, 'Our goddes with grace get vs þerfro', Troy, 2113. The phrase then means, as in l. 6, We have got the better of them, but look out for their treachery.

## III.

**Edward in Brabant. The Sack of Southampton. The Taking of the 'Christopher.'**

The first forty lines of this piece describe Edward's reception in Flanders. He sailed from Orwell on the 16th of July, 1338, and landed on the 22nd at Antwerp, where he was received with much ceremony. Minot is, however, mistaken in saying that he was met by the Emperor; it was only after irritating delays, unmentioned by the poet, on the part of his allies that Edward went in search of him to Coblenz and received his commission as Vicar-General of the Empire, which enabled him to strike money for the payment of his German auxiliaries (l. 35).

The second section of the poem describes the mischief done by Philip's fleet on the south coast of England. Already in 1337 and therefore before Edward's departure for Brabant (see ll. 40-48), a strong force of Normans, Picards and Genoese under Nicholas Behuchet had burnt Portsmouth. On Sunday, Oct. 4, 1338, while the townspeople were at mass, the French landed at Southampton from fifty galleys under Quieret, (v. 8) Behuchet, Barbenoire (x. 19) and Ayton Doria. They remained plundering till they learned that the country was rising against them, when they set fire to the town and retreated to their ships. Some three hundred of the lingerers, and among them the son of the king of Sicily were cut off (ll. 63-70). Then, says Minot, they saw the Christopher at Aremouth in the Isle of Wight just opposite Southampton, and carried it off. But Adam of Murimuth, pp. 87, 100, says that the Christopher was one of five large vessels taken by the French in the port of Sluys while most of the sailors had gone to the town; and Edward himself in his despatch written after the battle of the Swyn details the recovery of the 'Cristofre et les autres qui estoient perdues à Middelburgh' (Nicolas, *History of the Navy*, ii. p. 502). Further, Murimuth dates the loss of the Christopher on the feast of St. Michael, Sept. 29, the Tuesday before the attack on Southampton, while Minot reverses in point of time the order of the events. The presence of Edward at the fight is not mentioned by any chronicler, and the silence of de Klerk obliges us to fall back on the ingenious suggestion of Sir Harris Nicolas (id. p. 37), that the poet has confounded the presence of the ship 'Edward' with that of the king. The continuator of Nangis (ii. 161, 2) treats the sack of Southampton and the taking of the ships as quite distinct events, and says that the fight raged about the Christopher for nearly a whole day with much bloodshed on both sides. (De Klerk, *Van den derden Edewaert*. Murimuth. Walsingham. Nangis. Lockhart's *Isle of Wight*).

In the MS. the next poem is written continuously with this. We may infer that this one originally ended at line 116, and that the poet, at the revision which left his works much in their present shape, added ll. 117-126 as a connecting link between two poems which naturally group together. Line 117 is a formula commonly used in the romances to introduce a new topic, here the revenge of the English at Sluys and Cressy foretold after the event.

1. *se and sand*, sea and shore, land; a favourite combination of which Maetzner has collected examples in *Alt. Sprachproben*, i. p. 362. Add, 'Was neuer more serwful segge, bi se, nor bi sande,' Swete Susan, 254; 'That lufes the more, by se and sand, | Than any man that es lifand,' Ywaine, 3657-8; 'pat all wroght and has in hand, | Sun and mone and se and sand,' Cursor, 10910; Erl of Tolous, 908; York Plays, 12/74 and frequently; but note 'see and lande,' Sir Isumbras, 732. Minot's opening would satisfy the writer of Emare (ll. 13-18), 'Menstrelles, that walken fer and wyde, | Her and ther in every a syde, | In mony a dyverse londe, | Sholde, at her bygynnyng, | Speke of that ryhtwes king, | That made both see and sonde.' Comp. also Bosworth Feilde, Percy Folio MS. iii. 235/1.

4. *withowten strif*, past denial, undoubted, as will be seen by comparison with, 'pe ioyes sere | pat god ordans with-owten strue | To þam pat lufes him in þare liue,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 169/438-40; 'Yf þo lorde gyf oȝt to terme of lyf, | The chaunceler hit seles withouten stryf,' Babees Book, 318/567-8.

5. The construction with *to* is noteworthy; comp. 'Wher þou salt wreth to us withouten ende,' E. E. Psalter (Surtees, xvi.), i. p. 283; 'And all men þe sonere foregaue | There wreth þat þei to oȝer haue,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 340/101, 2; Castel off Loue, 905. So with words of similar meaning, 'To quam men sal haue gret envi,' Cursor, 9332, but also with *at* in Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 33/491.

13. Lewis of Bavaria was elected Emperor in 1314, as Lewis the Fourth, but his election was not recognised by Pope John XXII. In 1341 he concluded a strict alliance with Philip of France. He died in 1347.

20. *Duche tung*. Comp. 'This Duche-land cald Germany,' Wyn-toun, iv. 2423. The expression, no doubt, includes all the German dialects; De Klerk lamenting the divisions of Christendom says, 'Want tkerstenheit es gedeelt in tween; | Die Walsche tongen die es een, | Dandre die Dietsche al geheel,' ll. 1585-7.

21. See introduction; but it is curious that de Klerk speaks of Edward's reception by the emperor on landing almost in the same terms as here, 'Doe die keiser dat vernam, | Dat die coninc van Engellant

quam, | Ontfing hine mit groter eren, Alse betaemt selken heren,' ll. 349-52. The Chronique de Berne has, 'Lorsqu'il arriva à Anvers, le duc de Brabant vint lui offrir son pays et tout ce qu'il possédait,' cited in Froissart, ii. p. 544. 'Et applicuerunt apud Andwarp, ubi prima facie cum honore recepti: et sibi dederunt obviam ibidem dux Brabantiae, comites Hanoniae, de Geldre, et de Julers, et alii magnates partium illarum, parati ad suum servitium, ut dixerunt,' Murimuth, p. 85.

23. with all payre rede, with the advice of them all, with one consent; practically the same as 'pis tui bischopes and seint Dunstan were al at one rede,' Maetzner, Sprachprob., i. 175/143. Comp. also 'And beryd þe cors with both her rede,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 335/76. For *proferd* comp. 'He profers hym on all wyse | To myne honor and may serveyse,' Ywaine, 1233, 4.

26. Notwithstanding anything which might happen. Cursor, 8731, has 'For nathing, sco said, mai fall,' in same sense.

29. in *frith* and *fen*. *fen* is for the rhyme; the usual phrase being *frith and fell*, as in Anturs of Arther, i.; Thomas of Erceeldoune, 319; Towneley Plays, p. 131; Percy Folio, iii. p. 57, note. *Fild and frithe* come in Sir Amadace, xlii, and Alisaunder fragment, 15.

35. 'Si tinrent (Edward and his Queen) leur estat à Louvaing tout cel yver moult honnourablement, et fist faire monnoye d'or et d'argent à Antwers à grand foison; et fit faire escus à l'aigle au nom de l'empereur, semblans aux escus que le roi de France faisoit, qui bien eurent et ont leur cours.' Le Bel, i. p. 149. Ruding, Annals of the Coinage; vol. i. p. 408, thinks these coins were struck with English dies and are not now to be distinguished; while Lelewel, Numismatique du Moyen-Age, iii. p. 280, says that the 'esterlings' of Luxembourg were servilely copied in the name of Edward, and he figures in Plate xx, no. 46, a coin bearing the inscription LOCENBGENSIS. Comp. *Lusheborgh*, Piers Plowman, Notes, p. 357. But Van der Chÿs, in his Munten der voormalige Hertogdommen Brabant en Limburg, gives representations of some of them, and says that they are of English type but easily distinguished by their legends from coins struck in England (Notes and Queries, 1852, p. 150); and a representation of one of them of silver is engraved in Willems' ed. of de Klerk's poem. It has on one side the crowned head of the king with legend MONETA : NRA : ANTVVERP✠ (our mint of Antwerp), and on the other, BNDICTV : SIT : NOMEN : DNI : NRI✠ on the outer circle; SIGNUM CRUCIS and a cross within.

36. Comp. 'Her egain mai naman sai,' Cursor, 798.

47. Comp. viii. 95.

52. Who had experienced both victory and defeat. The words are used with their ordinary meaning in 'þe pople fel adoun to grounde | þai nist of wele no wo,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 234/348.



57. held vp paire handes, as a way of showing thankfulness. So, 'The burgeyse held vp his hand | And thanked God that he hathe found,' Ipomydon, 1351-2; '& Adam held vp boþe his hond | & þonked God of alle his sond,' Horstmann, A. L., i. 144/489-90. It is a gesture of assent, Erl of Tolous, 632; Sir Ferumbras, 1406; and of prayer, Cursor, 4767.

59. Hamton, Southampton. The longer name appears for the first time about the middle of the tenth century, but in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries Hampton is much the commoner.

66. bileuid, remained. So in Thomas of Erceldoune, 23, 'And wha sall dye and byleve thare.'

74. syde, coast. It must be understood with Flandres. Comp. 'Item alle Selandes side strecket dat lant sutwest and nortost. Item alle Vlanderenssyden strecket westsutwest und ostnortost,' Seebuch, pp. 50, 51.

76. Armouth, Yarmouth, at the mouth of the western Yar on the north-west coast of the Isle of Wight. It is styled Eremouth in its first charter, dated A.D. 1135, and the first appearance of the present name in an official document apparently occurs in a charter of James the First granted to Eremue *alias* Yarmouth. In Rymer it is Yarnemuth in *Insula Vectae*, ii. p. 950, while Great Yarmouth is generally Gerne-muth or Jernemuth, *id.* p. 948.

79. The galley was a vessel of a long and narrow type impelled mainly by oars. At this time it was most used by the Genoese and other sailors of the Mediterranean. Those ordered by Philip for his proposed Crusade in 1332 were for crews of two hundred men each, while the gálions or galiots of the same class but smaller were to be manned by one hundred men (Jal, *Archéologie Navale*, i. pp. 453, 4. In 1337, Ayton Doria of Genoa covenants to supply the French king with twenty galleys at 900 golden florins a month each. Each galley is to be manned by a captain, 2 mates, 2 clerks, 25 arblast men, and 180 rowers. The contract is printed in the *Chronique Normande*, p. 210, and Doria was present at the pillage of Southampton with these vessels, receiving a present of a hundred 'livres tournois' from Quieret for coming to the help of his men whose vessel first entered the harbour, *id.* p. 251. For pictures of galleys see Yule's *Marco Polo* and Stirling-Maxwell's *Don John of Austria*. Jurien de la Gravière, *Les derniers jours de la Marine à Rames*, Paris 1885, though mainly about the galley of the sixteenth century, has a good appendix on its construction and management. The taret, O. F. taride, L. L. tareda, tarida, was a large vessel like a galley but mostly used for transport (Jal, *Glossaire Nautique*, pp. 1429, 30). The cog, O. N. kuggt, was an English vessel very broad and deep in proportion to its length. The king's favourite

vessel, the cog Thomas, was manned by 136 sailors, and was probably of 200 to 250 tons burthen (Nicolas, ii. p. 161). But it seems to have been one of the largest; the John de Douorre and the Mighel of the same place have each 34 soldiers at 8d. a day, and 35 sailors at 3d. a day in 46 Edw. III. (Record Office, E. B. 160<sup>95</sup>). The English war vessel of this period was generally a merchant ship specially fitted with a high raised bulwark at either end.

87. *still*, if correct, is due to the need for a rhyme; it rhymes with *will* seven times.

92. *in dede doghty*. Comp. 'Sone, seyde Clement, be doghty of dede,' Octavian, 150/1438; 'Sir knyghtys that ar of dede dughty,' Towneley Plays, pp. 179, 258.

93. *wane* mostly takes a noun in apposition, as, 'To Sarsyns habbeþ þay 3yue anon | Of sturne strokes wel god won,' Sir Ferumbras, 5517; 'for 3e haue werldes welth gude wane,' Galba, E. ix. f. 26 b<sup>2</sup>. So with other words of similar meaning, 'He sal quete find vs gret plente,' Cursor, 6500.

95. *put þam to were*. Professor Skeat explains, 'prepared themselves for battle' or 'prepared to defend themselves.' It might mean, 'put the enemy in distress.'

100. *hire*. Comp. vii. 66.

102. A formula which occurs frequently, with little meaning, in the romances. Comp. 'Thane armede þe geaunt hym ful wele | Bothe in iryne and in stele,' Octavian, 111/690-1; 'And an helm of ryche atyre | That was stele, and noon yre,' Lybeaus, 238-9, and 437; 'Girde þi swerde of iren and stele,' E. E. Psalter, i. p. 145; Richard Coer de Lion, 2529; Alisaunder, 5549-51; and Sir Tristrem, 3324, in the note to which other places will be found quoted.

109. Comp. 'Thare i fand the fayrest thorne | That ever groued sen god was born,' Ywaine, 353-4; 'þat has bene us beforne | And þe tyme sen god was borne,' Galba, E. ix. f. 49 a<sup>2</sup>; Amis, p. xlv, has a large number of examples.

111. This turn of expression is found in Alisaunder, 3770-1, 'No sygh never men beter fyghtors, | Betir stonders, no beter weorryours,' and in Roland fragment, 1001, 'Was ther neuer beter men slayn, I trow.'

116. 'For their earnest wish to beat the French.' Comp. 'As thai that war in-to gud will | To wenge the angir and the Ill,' Bruce, v. 99, 100, and xix. 417; 'He þat wes mast in gud wil | His handis for to strek hir til,' Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 188/127; York Plays, 66/336.

117. Such expressions were used by the minstrels to rouse the attention of their hearers at the beginning of a new division of their story. Comp. viii. 57, and Amis, p. xliii, for a collection of them.

126. *his haly hand*. Comp. 'Hold over me, Lord, thy holy hand,'

Towneley Plays, p. 36; 'Godd hald ouer him his holi hand,' Cursor, 4196 and 4804.

## IV.

**Edward's first invasion of France. Flamengerie.**

About the 20th of September, 1339, Edward quitted Valenciennes at the head of the allied forces, and entered Cambrésis. He captured Thun-l'Evêque and besieged Cambrai, but as the winter was coming on he decided to abandon the siege and to invade France. Many strong places were taken and sacked on his way, and nothing was to be seen but fire and ruin till Edward arrived at Flamengerie. Meanwhile Philip had taken up a position hardly two leagues distant at Buironfosse. On Sunday, the 17th of October, a letter was sent by Gallois de la Baume, the commander of the crossbowmen, on behalf of his master Philip, to Hugh de Genève for Edward. It was attested by an accompanying letter from the king of Bohemia, and it stated that the king of France had been told that Edward had said he would wait a fortnight or three weeks for a battle if he knew Philip wanted to fight. If then, it continued, Edward will wait till Thursday or Friday following he will get his desire. Edward replied that he had been in France for more than three weeks, and Philip could have fought already if he had wished. He would however wait till the day named. On the Wednesday accordingly, he prepared for the fight but the enemy did not come. Thursday was spent in a foray on the country about Thierace, and on Friday Edward again awaited the French. In the evening Philip sent a message that he would not fail Edward on the next day. On Saturday then Edward took up a position about a league from Flamengerie, and drew up his men so skilfully that the Germans and Brabançons were astonished and delighted when they saw the king and his people 'prest pur vivre et mourir en la place' (Froissart, xviii. p. 90). After Edward had knighted a large number of the young esquires, he and his nobles caused wine to be given to the troops, 'feirent amener des vynes pur doner à boire à tous lours gentes' (id. xviii. p. 91). A prisoner was then sent off to Philip to point out that it was not courteous to keep the English waiting. But the king of France retreated to St. Quentin on the same day, Saturday the 23rd, with such haste that he left behind him a thousand horses in a marsh. Edward, by his own account, remained till the following Monday, when he returned to Antwerp, but Nangis says he too went on Saturday. The French king's reasons for not fighting are variously stated; he was dissuaded because it was Friday, because his troops were not sufficiently rested, and because Edward's position was too strong. King Robert of Sicily, too, had dis-

covered by astrological science that the fates were against him. De Klerk says that he was eager to fight till he ascertained that the Duke of Brabant was still with Edward. (Froissart. L'Ordonnance des Anglais à la Flamengerie, printed in Lettenhove, xviii. p. 89, from MS. Cotton, Caligula D. iii. Avesbury. Rymer. Chronicon Monast. de Melsa. iii. Nangis. Chronique Normande. De Klerk. Oudegherst.)

This poem in the MS. follows the last one without any break, but as it differs in form from the third, it is here separated from it. Opposite the first line in the MS. is written in pencil, Warton, iii. p. 103; see Ritson's Minot, p. ix. for a characteristic reference to the History of English Poetry.

3. The repetition of *cumly* is suspicious, but comp. vii. 95.

6. To time, until. Comp. 'To tyme that childe to deth were dight,' Towneley Plays, p. 185.

7. of mightes maste. The plural noun is usually found in this phrase. Comp. vii. 26; 'I trow in the mekle God, that maist of michtis may,' Coillyear, 888; 'God in glorie of myghteste moost,' Sowdone of Babylone, 1.; 'Art þou noghte halden of myghtis moste,' Sege off Melayne, 550; Cursor, 25577; Horstmann, A. L., i. 200/122. But, 'As mon on this mydlert that most is of myȝte,' Anturs of Arther, 1.

12. The same combination occurs in Cursor, 839, 'Of sin, and sorou and shame and strife.'

18. So John of Bridlington's prophecy, 'Laetificabuntur Angli pinguedine musti' with the gloss, 'i. per bona vina quae bibent ad suorum confortationem transeundo per terram Franciae.' Wright, Pol. Poems, i. p. 156-7. According to the Frenchman in the Dispute, id. p. 92, the English were not used to it; 'Non alit ipse liquor vitis, faex venditur Anglis, | Quae cum sit liquida creditur esse liquor.'

26. prise, glory, honour. So Sir Tristrem, 51, 'To heiȝe and holden priis,' to exalt and retain their fame; Bøddeker, A. D. 129/88; Bruce, xiv. 82. Minot's opinion is shared by at least one French chronicler: 'Et tunc rex Franciae nescitur quali usus consilio, eidem obviare differt, propter quod magnum scandalum ac murmur non solum in exercitu sed etiam in toto regno contra ipsum exortum est,' Nangis, ii. p. 164.

30. Comp. iv. 96; and, 'I shal schak hym by the berd | The nexte tyme we mete,' Sir Degrevant, 819-20; 'The kyng by chyn him schoke,' Alisaunder, 3934.

43. morning, probably of Saturday the 23rd. The mist is not mentioned in any of the chronicles.

45. Their joyful anticipation of battle was clouded. Other examples of the alliteration are, 'Micht I chaip of this chance, that changes my

cheir,' Coilzear (Laing), 721; 'Qwan þe Juwys thoutyn hym to slo, | þan chaungyd al here chere,' Horstmann, A. L., i. 103/155-6; Ywayne, 2234; Launfal, 921; Le Bone Florence, 819. See also Maetzner, p. 563.

54. *frek* to fight. Comp. l. 84, and i. 13. *Frek* alternates with *fresh* in this phrase; so, 'To fyghte they were ful fresche that tyde,' Richard Coer de Lion, 6932; 'All fressch i am to fyght,' Lybeaus, 1841; Alisaunder fragment, 946.

56. *dwell*, await battle, for which Minot more commonly uses *abide*.

57. *gayned him no gle*, availed him no sport, or perhaps, 'fortune of war,' as Professor Skeat suggests. The expression is not common, but comp. 'Of a gome þat gayned no gle,' Rel. Ant. i. p. 77; 'þer nis no murgþe þat may him gayne,' Sir Ferumbas, 2034; 'Vngainand þan sal be his gamen,' Cursor, 22751. But a similar phrase with '*to game*,' 'to please,' is frequent, as, 'gamyt hem non oþer gle,' Horst. A. L., i. 107/424; 'Quen he wit his gleu him gammen,' Cursor, 7409; 'Sone with þe Danes gamned þam no glewe,' Langtoft, i. p. 18.

58. So, 'He no coupe no better bot' (he knew of no better resource). Rouland and Vernagu, 564; 'Florent sawe none odor bote | But þat he muste fyght on fote,' Octavian, 140/1261-2.

59. *on fote*, on his feet. *Fote* here and at vi. 30, is a dative plural, M. E. *foten*, O. E. *fōtum*. See Zupitza, Guy of Warwick, 598 note.

61-63. Philip in his challenge had declared himself willing to take up a position unfortified by wood, marsh or water. But Edward in his letter to the council (Avesbury, p. 48-9), declares that Philip broke this self-imposed condition; 'En le mesme temps si estoient d'ascuns de nos descoverours un chevalier d'Almaygne pris, qu'avoit veu tut nostre array, et le remonstra en aventure à nos enemys, issint (ainsi) meintenaunt qu'il fist retrère s'avaunt-garde et comaunda de loggier, et fisrent fossés entour eaux et coupèrent les grosses arbres pour nous tollier (take away, prevent, L. tollere) la venue à eaux,' (quoted from Froissart, xviii. p. 94-5). Murimuth, p. 92, is to the same effect, 'Sed rex Franciae, licet prope fuisset per duo millaria, nunquam tamen voluit eis appropinquare; sed rediit et fractis pontibus, et prostratis arboribus ad impediendum iter regis Angliae ne sequeretur eum, [Parisios est reversus].' Comp. also for the combination, 'He have gevyn amonge the okes | knyghtys so mony grette strokes,' Ipomadon, 4015-6.

67. *cares colde*, also at vii. 87. It is a very common alliterative expression; 'For care ful colde þat to me caȝt,' The Pearl, 50; 'þus y kippe & cacche cares ful colde,' Bōddeker, Alteng. Dicht., 104/61 and 102/9; Towneley Plays, p. 238; 'Casten y wol the from cares ant kelde,' Specimens of Lyric Poetry (Percy Soc.), p. 37; 'þe kyng for þat care coldit at his hert,' Troy Book, 1306; Awntyrs of Arthure, 150;

W. of Palerne, 1656. On the other hand we have, 'þaȝ I hente ofte harmeȝ hate,' The Pearl, 388.

70. þe king als of Nauerne, Philip the Third was the father-in-law of Philip of Valois. His eldest son, Charles the Second, the Bad, was at Crécy. Nauerne rhymes with sterne in Octavian, 31/962, and the form is also used by Skelton, 'Of the kyng of Nauerne ye might take heed | Vngraciously how he doth speed,' i. 187/153, 4.

71. The line is corrupt, the second, third and fourth words are in smaller writing as if filled in afterwards. Skeat suggests that *feld* may mean, felled, knocked down, which would not suit the next line, or it may, he thinks, be an error for *fled*, i. e. had fairly fled away. Scholle adopts *felid* which can only mean, hid; comp. Small, Met. Homilies, p. 12. *Faire* seems to me to have absorbed two distinct words, *fain* and *for*. I propose to read, War fain for fered in the ferene. Comp. for *fayn*, 'Fayn he was hys hedd to hyde,' Erl of Tolous, 113, and for *for fered*, iv. 27, 93; vii. 90; 'And felede theme so feynte they falle in þe greves | In the ferynne of þe fyrthe, fore ferde of oure pople,' Morte d'Arthure, 1874-5; 'ffor to fele me for ferde of tha foule thynges,' id., 3238; 'He sperd his yate and in he ran | For fered of that wode man,' Ywayne, 1677-8. Maetzner, Alteng. Sprachproben, i. p. 122, note, gives further examples.

72. This alliteration is common, especially in the romances. Comp. 'Ther es none of ȝow so hardy, | And ȝe hade sene hiȝ chenalry, | ȝour hedis þat ye nolde hyde,' Rowland and Otuell, 262-4; 'For dred of dethe he hid neuer his hed,' Roland fragment, 211; 'Or busk to youre beyldyng | Your heedes for to hyde,' Towneley Plays, p. 141; Lybeaus, 1113; King of Tars, 1130; Horne Childe, p. 290. See also Amis, p. 1.

77. tolde, esteemed, held. This meaning is well illustrated by 'þar as y ha be arst mykel of tolde, For a coward y worþ y-holde,' Sir Ferumbras, 4212. Comp. also, 'ȝef þou art riche & wel ytold, | Ne be þou noht þarefore to bold,' Böddeker, Alteng. Dicht., 292/119, 20.

79. riȝhe on raw: the *row* of this phrase is apparently either the line of guests at table, or, as here, of knights in line of battle. Comp. 'Before þat riale renkis, richest on raw, | Salust þe bauld berne with ane blith wout,' Golagrus, 1277-8 (Anglia, ii. p. 438) the only example I have met with.

80. Comp. v. 29, x. 8. Villani, vi. p. 168, says of this occasion, 'Ma veggendosi che il re di Francia non venia alla battaglia trombande e ritrombande se n' andarono ad Arenes in Tiraccia (Thiérace).' Froissart shows us Edward entering Berwick in 1333 'à grant solennité de trompes et de nakaires, de cornemuses, claroneaux et tabourins,' ii. p. 275. Like his father he was a great patron of minstrels of all kinds, as his household accounts sufficiently show.

85-87. See the introduction to the poem, p. 54. But le Bel says the English and their allies had been drawn up in the fields from morning to noon without eating or drinking, i. p. 161. The practice is illustrated by Barbour, Bruce, xix. 331-6, where the English 'send out archeris a thousand | And gert thaim weill drink of the vyne | And bad thaim gang to bikkyr syne | The scottis host in abandounne, | And tuk if thai mycht dyng thaim doune.'

88. 'Le lundy matyn si avoms novels que ledit seigneur Phelip et tous ses alliés fusrent desparpillés et retrets à graunt haste,' Edward's letter, Froissart, xviii. p. 95.

## V.

## The Sea Fight at Sluys.

When Edward was about to leave England for his second invasion of France in 1340, he was told that Philip had collected a large fleet at Sluys to hinder his landing. He therefore waited about ten days (l. 21) till he had got together about two hundred ships, sailing on the 22nd of June. On the following day he arrived before Blanckenbergh, where he was joined on the morning of the 24th by Sir Robert Morley with fifty vessels of the Northern Fleet. The French were commanded by Hugues Quiéret and Nicolas Behachet, and they were strengthened by a squadron under Barbenoire, a corsair of Porto Venere. The battle, 'une des rudes & cruelles batailles marines dont on ouyt oncques parler' (Oudegherst, ii. p. 447) began early on Saturday the 24th, and resulted in the complete defeat of the French. The details of the struggle may be read in Nicolas, History of the Navy.

The stanza beginning with l. 15 in its present place separates the *herof* of l. 19 from l. 12 to which it refers; and in subject it plainly belongs to the second section of the poem which deals with those who were at the fight. It should be transferred, and probably to follow l. 62 or l. 70.

The irregularity in the length of the stanzas both here and in ix. is remarkable. They consist of six lines or of four, but the former may be extended to eight by the repetition in two additional lines of the idea of the sixth (see ll. 13, 14; ix. 7, 8; 27, 28). The two kinds of stanzas are mostly grouped together, not alternated. The irregularity is scarcely due to carelessness on the part of the scribe, or to writing down from imperfect memory, as nothing seems wanting to the sense in either poem. A similar irregularity, too, occurs in the Hymn on p. 75 of Religious Pieces (E.E.T.S. No. 26), which I ascribe to Minot: its verses are of eight lines with the exception of the first two, which have six each.

1. **Minot with mowth.** Comp. 'Horn iherde wip eres,' King Horn, 983.

4. **mi sorow suld slake,** a not common alliteration, but comp. 'That sone shalle slake oure sorowes sad,' Towneley Plays, 244; 'For it wolde do my sorowe to slake,' York Plays, 422/45; 'Allace, Ded, quene wil þu tak | Me, & al my sorou slak,' Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 19/496-7, and 119/254.

7. **cast was in care.** See vi. 18 note.

8. **Kyret.** Hugues Quiéret, Chevalier, Seigneur de Tours en Vimeu is styled 'magnificus vir dominus H. Q. miles admiratus' in a document of 1335 which gives him the command of five galleys in the proposed crusade of Philip. He was appointed Admiral of France in 1336, in 1338 he visited Bruges on behalf of the French King, and in 1339 he was Captain of Douay. In that year he served on the frontier of Flanders. He died of the wounds he received at Sluys. Froissart calls him 'bons chevaliers et hardis' (iii. 201). Two of his descendants were killed and two taken prisoner at Agincourt (de la Chenaye-Desbois, Dictionnaire de la Noblesse, xi. p. 637, xiv. p. 515. Luce, Froissart, i. p. ccxxii, ii. p. xvii.).

9. **Normondes.** The enemy's vessels were mainly manned by them. Comp. 'Dese vrancrijesche partien | Waren meest uut Normandien, | Ende van Kaley's uter stede; | Oic so waren daer mede | Een deel Vlaminge te waren | Die uten lande gebannen waren,' De Klerk, 1283-8. So in an account (Record Office, Navy 282) a payment is made to the master of a ship acquired 'apud le Esclus ad bellum Normannorum.' The fleets which had preyed on the southern coast of England, for the three years previous came mainly from the north of France, and the squadron which appeared before Southampton in 1339 summoned the town to surrender to the Duke of Normandy. Perhaps Minot, in his special dislike of 'þe fals folk of Normundy,' vii. 72, expresses a specially English feeling, a survival of the Conquest. Comp. from a poem of the middle of the thirteenth century, 'Gens Normannigena fragili nutritur avena, | Supdola, ventosa, mendax, levis, invidiosa, | Vincere mos est Francigenis nec sponte nocere, | Prodere dos Normannigenis belloque pavere,' Reliq. Antiq. i. p. 5. leue on his lare, see vi. 22, note.

12. **sowed him sare.** Sowed is explained by its synonym *smerted* in the next line. See Gloss. and for this Northern phrase comp. 'I shalle send ventyance ix or ten | Shalle sowe fulle sore or I seasse,' Towneley Plays, p. 59; 'For, in faythe, I fele yt yette | That sore it dothe me swe,' Ipomadon, 5813-4; 'Thinkand he mycht na payne mare | Do til hyme to sow hyme sare,' Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 104/291, 2; 'When I sall quake and dredfull be | And all my synnes sowe full sare,'



Religious Pieces, 77/75, 6; 'pat wil yow hereafter sare sow,' Cursor, 6568; York Plays, 334/437.

15. Edward in his despatch says, 'Les Fflemengs estoient de bone volente davoit venuz a nous ala bataille du comencement tanqe ala fin' (Nicolas, ii. p. 502), a statement which Nicolas (p. 51) finds rather obscure. But Froissart is explicit, 'Et dura le bataille del heure de prisme jusques à relevée (afternoon) et adont vinrent grant gent de Flandres, car tres le matin li bailleux de l'Escluse l'avoit fet segnefyer à Bruges et ès villes voisines. Si estoient les villes toutes esmutes et acouru à piet et à cheval et par le Roe . . . et s'asablèrent à l'Escluse grant quantité de Flammens et entrèrent en nefes et en barges et en grans vaissiaux espagnols et s'en vinrent jusques à le bataille tout fresk et tout nouvel et grandement reconfortèrent les Engles,' Froissart, iii. p. 197.

17. *po Sluse*, province of Zeeland, arrondissement of Middelburgh: 'Le havre de l'Escluse qui est ung des plus beaulx havres de Cristianité,' Le Débat des Hérauts (abt. 1450) p. 27. The word means 'the floodgate,' L. *exclusa*; it began to supersede the former name *Zwijn*, the southern port, about the middle of the fourteenth century (Southey, Lives of the Admirals, i. p. 245). The harbour is now sanded up. *by a name*, is here apparently a mere *cheville*, elsewhere it means, expressly; 'But god that died ffor man be name | Saue his body fro dedly shame,' Beuis of Hamtoun, f. 137 a; 'I saide pat he schuld breke | Youre barres and bandis by name,' York Plays, 383/189-90; 'As he told be by name, | To oure fader, Abraham,' Towneley Plays, p. 82.

20. Walshingham says that the information came from the Count of Gileres, i.e. Juliers (Hist. Anglic., i. p. 226). But Avesbury, p. 55, tells us that the king first heard of it from the Archbishop of Canterbury, and thought the story an invention to keep him at home. Orwell is a river the estuary of which opens out between Ipswich and Harwich in Suffolk. See Archaeologia, x. p. 350.

27. Blanckenbergh in West Flanders, arrondissement of Bruges, situated on the sea-coast a little to the west of the river Sluys. Saint Jons night, Friday the 23rd of June, is the vigil or evening before St. John's day.

30. See ix. 25, note.

32. Sir Robert Morley, Marshall of Ireland by his marriage with Hawyse, sister and heir to John le Mareschall of Hengham in Norfolk, and Admiral of the Northern Fleet in 1339-41, 1348, 1350 and 1355. He was at Crécy, Calais and Espagnols sur Mer. He died in France in 1360 possessed of the manors of Gressinghall and Morley Hall in Norfolk. The latter is in the parish of Morley St. Botolph, Hundred of Forehoe; it is not far from Wymondham. Blomefield's Norfolk, ii. p. 481.

33. *at half eb.* It was high water on the day of the battle at

11.23 a.m. (Nicolas, ii. p. 51), and if we take Minot's half-eb to mean half-tide, he will agree with Froissart, who says the battle began at prime, i.e. nine o'clock. But Edward in his despatch says that it began 'bien apres heure de noune,' which probably means, not earlier than 12 o'clock (Nicolas, ii. p. 503).

36. *paire wapin es oway*, a curious phrase to which I can offer no nearer parallel than, 'py mytje ys al oway,' Sir Ferumbras, 5126; 'Se, thi mens myghte es alle away,' Horstmann, A. L., i. 185/163.

37. William de Bohun was created earl of Northampton in 1337. He was at Flamengerie, and in 1342 he was appointed Lieutenant-General of Edward in Brittany. He captured the king of Majorca at Crécy. In 1350 he was Warden of the Scotch Marches, and he died in 1360. Doyle's Official Baronage, ii. p. 613.

38. *worthli in wede*. See x. 2, and the variant *wight in wede*, viii. 5. *Wede* is here armour, as in 'Richely armed in his wede,' Torrent of Portugal, 1265. The phrase is common in the romances, 'Jondere I see full brighte Banere | And worthily vndir wede,' Rowland and Otuell, 860-1; 'Pat ich maide, worpli in wede,' Amis, 1430, 'That wyt ys undyr wede,' Torrent of Portugal, 750; Sir Degrevant, 1892; Octavian, 65/21.

39. Sir Walter Manny, 'bons chevaliers, rades, preux, hardis, sages et bachelereux' (Froissart, ii. p. 193), is first met with in a Household Account of 1332, as Watelet de Hainault, pagius custos leporarium dominæ reginæ. He came to England in the train of Queen Philippa. In 1332 he was entrusted with the charge of the castle of Hardelagh, and in 1337 he was Admiral of the Northern Fleet and one of the commanders of the expedition to Cadzand. He commanded an expedition to Brittany in 1345 and was present at the siege of Calais. In 1347 he became a baron of the realm by a writ of summons to Parliament, and in 1348 he was again Admiral of the Northern Fleet. He took part in the sea-fight with the Spaniards in 1350. He died in London in 1372.

40. This line would present no difficulty if we read, Was bold burne his body in battle to bede. If it be right as it stands, it contains a curious admixture of two phrases, (1) bold of body, and (2) to bede (offer, risk) one's body, with a suggestion of (3) to bede (offer) battle. Comp. for (1) 'bold burnes of bodies . pere were on bope sides,' William of Palerne, 3618: for (2) 'Ye ne have na knyght in this cuntre | That durst right now his body bede,' Ywayne, 953: and for (3) 'Gif only wald hym byde battale,' Bruce, viii. 284; 'Ilk dai he come in place, | And batail bede wit sli manace,' Cursor, 7471-2; 'bataille to bede,' xi. 35. There are also the common, to abide battle, and to abide in battle, for which comp. 'The boldest vnder baner batelle to abide,' Political, Religious and Love Poems, 2/39; 'bold burnes to abide in

batayles harde,' William of Palerne, 3331; Hymns to the Virgin, 84/35-6. In xi. 34 *habyde* is used absolutely, with the same sense.

41. Henry of Derby, 'qui au temps présent est l'ung des plus proens et des beaulz chevaliers armé et désarmé qui soit en vye,' *Le Bel*, i. p. 16. He took part in the Scotch campaign of 1335. In 1337 he became Earl of Derby, and in that year he was joined with Sir Walter Manny in the attack on Cadzand. He was at Flamengeria. In 1345 he became Earl of Lancaster by the death of his father. He distinguished himself at the sea-fight with the Spaniards in 1350. He was created Duke of Lancaster by special charter in 1352. He was in France again in 1359 and 1360. He died of the plague in the following year. Doyle, ii. p. 312. *dight for to driue*, is a combination of which I have not found any other example.

42. *pat thought for to thriue*, that were bent on success. The phrase is illustrated by 'And hopis beste for to spede,' Thomas of Erceldoune, 454; 'Egyllamowre wened welles to do,' Sir Eglamour, 385; Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 178/89; and 'There come meny another man | That thought there to have to done,' Torrent of Portugal, 2546-7, where *welle* should be read for the second *to*.

43. *stint he pat striue*, put an end to that struggle. Comp. 'But they stynte of ther stryfe,' Erl of Tolous, 930; 'For he may stynte oure stryve,' York Plays, 58/61. See also Amis, p. xlvii.

45-6. 'A celle bataille fut mort ledit messire Hue Kyres et plusieurs de son lignage, et bien trente mille hommes que morts que noyez, ainsi comme on disoit; desquelz la mer en jetta grand partie sur la rive de l'Escluse et de Cagant, et furent trouvez aucuns tous armez ainsy que combastus s'estoient,' *Le Bel*, i. p. 172. Comp. too the grim joke recorded in the *Chronicon Monast. de Melsa*, iii. p. 45; 'Tantique fuerunt ibidem Franci et Normanni interfecti et submersi quod de eis ridicule dicebatur quod si Deus piscibus maris loquelam dedisset, ex ipsorum mortuorum devoratione, ydioma Gallicum profecto in posterum habuissent.' According to *Walshingham. Hist. Anglic.* i. p. 227, the news of the defeat was broken to the French King by his fool, who accused the English of cowardice, and when asked by the king why he did so, said, 'Quia timidi sunt, et in mare saltare non sunt ausi, ut fecerunt nostri Normanni et Gallici generosi.'

47. Sir William Clinton took part in Edward's first Scotch campaign, and he was subsequently Justice of Chester, Governor of Dover, and Warden of the Cinque Ports. He helped to surprise Mortimer at Nottingham, and was soon after, in 1330, summoned to Parliament as a Baron of the Realm. He was Admiral of the Western Fleet in 1333, and was at Halidon Hill in that year, and in 1335 and 1336 he was employed on various embassies. In 1337 he was created Earl of Hun-

tingdon. In 1339 he was Admiral of the Thames, and again Warden of the Cinque Ports. He was present at Crécy, and in the following years diplomatic missions were often entrusted to him. He died in 1354. Doyle, ii. p. 225. *eth for to know*. Comp. 'Eth was to know quilk þat þai ware,' Cursor, 8028.

48. on raw, he brought with him many good men (archers, as in l. 54) drawn up in good order. This seems the explanation most suitable to the *paire* of l. 49; otherwise *brought on raw* might mean, killed, as in, 'Smoot and leide on with mayn | And slough a rawe two duzeyn,' Alisaunder, 5838-9; 'That he myght the Romaynes kille | Playnly on a rowe,' Sowdone of Babylone, 389-90, and 3105-6; Sir Ferumbras, 4605.

53. Not Hugh Despencer, as Ritson says, but Hugh de Aldithley or Audley, who married the widow of Piers Gaveston, one of the daughters and co-heirs of Gilbert de Clare. He was with Edward in Scotland in 1335, and at Flamengerie. He was created Earl of Gloucester in 1337, and he died in 1347. Doyle, ii. p. 18.

59. John Badding, 'one of þe best,' is, unlike the six persons already commemorated, mentioned in no account of the battle. Possibly Badding is a scribe's error for (1) Beauchamp, second son of Guy de Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick, who is specially mentioned by Froissart, iii. p. 202, or for (2) Bathe or Bathon, who gave evidence in the Scrope and Grosvenor Case (Nicolas, Scrope and Grosvenor Roll, ii. p. 190), and who is probably identical with the Mayor of Bristol in 1369 and 1371 (Ricart's Kalendar, p. 35). But this is very improbable; the poet has here inserted the name of some comparatively obscure friend of his. A John Badding is mentioned in Harleian Charter, 84 B. 10. of 17th Richard II. He is one of four persons (another being a citizen of Norwich) to whom Alianor, widow of Robert de Ufford, surrenders her right of dower in the Manor of Chebynghale in Fresyngfeld, County Suffolk, but nothing further of him is known. The surname is more particularly connected with Sussex. A Ralph de Bedyng is Prior of Sele in that county in 1324 (Sussex Collections, x. 128). Richard Baddyng is part master and owner of a barge of Rye in 46 Edw. III. (Compotus of William Tidecombe, Record Office, E.B. 160, 282). He is apparently the person who was M.P. for Rye in 1366 and 1368 (Sussex Collections, xxx. p. 189, and Return of Names of Members of Parliament, Parliamentary Papers, p. 181) and who has property in Winchelsea in 1358 (S. C., xxviii. p. 92), and was bailiff of Rye by royal appointment in 49 Edw. III (Abbrev. Rot. Original., ii. p. 336). A Robert Baddyng was master of the Gabriell in 46 Edw. III, and of the Bayarde between 43 and 49 Edw. III (Record Office, E.B. 380 282). He is probably the same person as the M.P. for Winchelsea in 1371 (Return of Members, p. 187). A John Baddyng was M.P. for Rye on six occasions between

1386 and 1407 (id. p. 230-273). We may conjecture that it was some person connected with these whom Minot celebrates.

62. So, 'Lyghtly walde þey it noghte yelde | To þay had foughtten paire fill,' The Sege off Melayne, 212-3.

63. Jan van Eyle or Heylle was a leading citizen of Sluys. He belonged to the Leliaert party, and had gone into exile with Count Louis of Flanders. He was in command of the Christopher, was taken prisoner and, though a large ransom was offered, was beheaded before the Halle in Bruges. De Klerk, 1289-98.

64. Cadzant is the name of a village in the province of Zeeland, arrondissement of Middelburgh, on the south bank of the mouth of the Scheldt, and also of the island between the village and Walcheren.

69. Whoever knew his business might show it there, i.e. it was a good opportunity for the skilful sailor. For the alliteration comp. 'Heo nolde cwythe us his name, | For craft that we couthe,' Swete Susan, 233-4; 'Maumecet coupe ful wel þat craft: and put him anon þar-to,' Sir Ferumbras, 1312; 'þat mercy schal hyr craftes kyþe,' The Pearl, 356; Maetzner, Alteng. Sprachproben, i. 60/131; Amis. p. xlix.

73. Hemingburgh, ii. 356, says they recovered the Edward, the Katherine and the Rose, three very large 'cogs.' Comp. for the alliterative formula, iv. 47, and, 'Whan he of bond was brouht for ransoun þat was riche,' Langtoft, i. p. 201; 'Because of yone bald berne that brought me of bandis,' Golagrus, 1316 (Anglia, ii. p. 439).

75. with stremers ful still, as no longer hostile to the English. The streamer, a very long flag, was a warlike ensign; see in Nicolas, ii. p. 182, an instance in which vessels going on a peaceful mission are forbidden to carry them.

77. wurthi in wall. Comp. 'To wyne the worthiest within the wall.' Squyr of Lowe Degre, 634; 'That er wes wildest in with walle,' Specimens of Lyric Poetry (Percy Society), p. 48. The phrase has arisen out of an older and misunderstood *worthy in wale*, or *worthy to wale*, choice, which occurs in, 'Schir Wawine wourthy in wail,' Golagrus, 982 (Anglia, ii. p. 432); 'Lo! here a worthy wyff to wale,' Wyntoun, v. 5085; 'And worthy wemen to wale weping with teris,' Troy Book, 9112; 'Thar Hesylyrg duelt, that cursyt knyght to wail,' Wallace, v. 574, and vii. 302-3; Sir Degrevant, 1872.

78. Nicolas notes that Minot is the only English writer who speaks of the king's personal bravery in the battle. But he is in accord with Le Bel, 'Maiz le roy Edowart se maintint si vassaument, et faisoit de si grands proesses de son propre corps, que il resbaudioit (re-animated) et donnoit cuer à tous les aultres,' i. p. 172; and with De Klerk, 'Die coninc was, wien lief wien leet, | Bi den iersten daer men street, | Ende vacht mitter hant so sere | Dat wonder was van selken here, 1253-6.

For, faire mot him fall, comp. 'Now fare myght ye falle for youre talkyng,' Towneley Plays, p. 193; 'feyre, syrrys; mote yow befall,' Le Bone Florence, 198.

'82. til þat gude dede, perhaps, to that fair feat of arms, as in, 'Alle the world he hath justid with, | That come to that dede,' Torrent of Portugal, 2499-500.

86. bost. Comp. vi. 20, note.

## VI.

### The Siege of Tournay.

Immediately after the victory of Sluys, Edward held a council at Ghent, and another at Vilvorde, where it was decided to besiege Tournay. Philip, recognising the importance of the place, threw into it a strong reinforcement under the Constable while he himself took up a position between Lens and Arras with seventy thousand men. Edward, with not less than one hundred and twenty thousand men, began the siege on the 23rd of July. An attempt to take the place by storm failing, the allied forces maintained a strict blockade and ravaged the surrounding country. On the 7th of September Philip advanced to Bouvines, but he was advised that Edward's position was unassailable, and he made no effort to relieve the besieged, who were by that time reduced to extremity. But just when Edward's triumph seemed certain, negotiations for a truce were entered upon, and the articles were signed at Esplechin on the 25th of September. It is difficult to believe that Edward relinquished his great advantage for the reasons usually assigned. The intercession of the Countess of Hainault, the want of money, the long duration of the siege, the approach of autumn, had not so much weight with the king as the knowledge that through the treachery of the duke of Brabant his allies could not be kept any longer in the field. (Le Bel. *Chronique de Tournay* & *Chronique de Berne*, quoted in Lettenhove, iii. Oudegherst. Meyer.)

The poem is supposed by Wright and Bierbaum to have been written before Edward was obliged to abandon the siege. At least ll. 60-70 must have been composed after that event, for the duke of Brabant did not go till the treaty of which he was one of the principal negotiators had been signed. On the other hand, the mocking and triumphant tone of the preceding lines points to anticipated and almost assured success. Probably the original ballad ended with l. 56, followed by ll. 71-78; the poet when rearranging and revising his works inserted the explanatory lines 60-70, added the awkward transition lines 57-59 (with the past tense *was fain*), and lines 79-81, to correspond. The

intentional vagueness of the rhyming couplet prefixed to the poem marks it as belonging to the later revision.

1-4. Tournay, a boar with corselets (warriors) who is brought before your walls has purposed to build for you sorrow and trouble. For examples of the omission of the relative, see Koch, Eng. Gram. ii. § 362. Wright following Ritson takes *timber* to mean destruction, but it is a verb, as in 'Hit schalle be tynte, as I troue, and timburt with tene,' Anturs of Arther, xxii.; 'Whan þe Danes were out, þat timbred him his tene,' Langtoft, i. p. 45; 'And that hath tymberde all my teene,' Le Bone Florence, 560; Awntyrs of Arthure, 281; Lazamon, 28209. The phrase *tray and tene* is mostly northern: add to the collection in Brandl, Thomas of Erceldoune, p. 134, 'þat liueþ in treye & tene,' Amis, 1572; 'Wit outhen ten, wit outhen tral,' Small, Metrical Homilies, p. 133; 'And went hir þepen in tene and trei,' Cursor, 10472, & 17050; William of Palerne, 2073. *brenis* may mean a single coat of mail, that of the boar; comp. 'And woundede sir Rowlande wonder sore, | thurgh his brenyes brighte,' Rowland and Otnell, 1397-8; 'Thane was he warre of a wye wondyre wele armyde, | Buskede in brenyes bryghte to behalde,' Morte Arthure, 2515, 7. But it may also mean warriors, if so, it is repeated in *with schillterouns* of l. 6. *bare*, boar, as in Sir Tristrem, 824-5, 'Heuedes of wild bare | Ichon to presant broujt.' It is a common designation of Edw. III., 'Tertius Edwardus, aper Anglicus et leopardus,' Wright, Pol. Poems, i. p. 27; Walsingham, Hist. Anglic. i. p. 274, describes him when angry, 'frendens apri more.' See vii. 9. For line 4, comp. vii. 21, and viii. 20.

5. See Amis, p. LI, for examples of this combination collected from the romances.

9. went, so in similar alliterations, 'And þi worship is went & wastid for euer,' Troy Book, 8118; 'ffor nowe my wirchipe es wente, and my were endide,' Morte Arthure, 3958.

10. *wakkins*, is aroused, begins. \* Comp. 'Thare wakkyns woo fulle wyde,' Sir Isumbras, 227, 323, 419; 'Wer wakyn & wo for þi wickede dede,' Troy Book, 1404, 2046, 8183; 'Lat twinne hem in two, | For now wakneth heor wo,' Swete Susan, 296-7; 'I schal waken vp a water to wasch alle þe worlde,' Cleanness, 323.

12. *on ilka syde*. See i. 19 note.

13. *rent* is sometimes used vaguely for income, what is to be looked for, what falls to one's lot. Scholle quotes Alisaunder, 1847-8, 'In iustis and fyghtis n'ys non othir rent, | Bote strokis, and knokkis and hard deontis.' Comp. also, Richard Coer de Lion, 4028. So in Cursor, 19594, 5, 'It fell saint petre als for rent, | To call men vnto

amendment,' it has a similar meaning, what is assigned as one's province.

15. *hent*, seized, received. It often occurs in this connection, as in 'Mony harmys þai hent er hor helpe come,' Troy Book, 5778; 'For ofte harmes were hente · þat helpe we ne myȝte,' Cheuelere Assigne, 3. Bearing in mind the great elaboration of Minot's alliteration, and looking to the analogy of such places as, 'We mot holde to oure harmes · it helps nouȝt elles,' William of Palerne, 3988; 'Holde at þow hente has, it harmez bot lyttile,' Morte Arthure, 1842-3, we are tempted to read holde in l. 16, and holdis in l. 17. We should then have in l. 17 a medial alliteration of *d* thrice. But comp. 'He will þe preist þam hele and hide,' Cursor, 27437.

17. *als hende*, as quickly as possible. There are two closely related M.E. words, (1) *hende*, A.S. *gehende*, a derivative from *hand*, with the same development of meaning as Germ. *anständig*, at hand, proper, pleasing; and (2) *hendy*, A.S. *hendig*, as adj., dexterous, as adv. quickly. There is an interchange of meanings between these words. In Havelok, 2628, and in ix. 37, *hende* means dexterous, here it has the adverbial force of *hendy*, i.e. quickly, but in vii. 34, gracious. See Bøddeker, Alteng. Dicht., glossary.

18. *cast in care*, see v. 7, ix. 60, and compare, 'Of þe smal þat was so swote, | Pre hundred sike hadde her bote, | & cast were out of care,' Roland and Vernagu, 107-9; 'þaȝ he be kest into kare, he kepes no better,' Cleanness, 234; and Cursor, 25705.

20. *frankis fare*, lit. French way, hence boastful show, assumption of superiority, such as the French affected. Comp. 'He (Christ) es made of manhede | for all his frankis fare,' Evangel. Nichodemi in MS. Galba, E. ix. f. 64 a<sup>2</sup>. There is another example in Maetzner, ii. p. 202. In the other place where the phrase occurs, Sir Gawayne, 1116, *frenkysch fare* means fine manners. Comp. further, i. 25, vii. 118, x. 5, xi. 18; 'I forsaik nouȝt to feȝht for al his grete feir,' Golagruss, 810 (Anglia, ii. p. 428); 'Her leffe es strekyne down I wene | For all his freshe fare,' Ipomadon, 4341-2; Bruce, ix. 137; Sir Degrevant, 1243-4; Morte Arthure, 2225, 2745. For charges of boastfulness against the French, comp. l. 26, i. 45, v. 86; 'The Frensche men cunne bothe bost and blowe | And with heore scornes us to-threte,' Wright, Pol. Poems, i. p. 218; 'I say, lady Prudence, howe the Frenchemen be great braggers, bosters and mangnyfers of them selves dyspraysynge all nacions sayng them selves,' Le Débat des Hérauts, p. 58; 'The Frensche men be covaytous; | Whenne they sitte at the taverne, | Ther they be stoute and sterne | Bostful wordes for to crake, | And off her dedes yelpyng make. | Lytyl wurth they are and mekyl proude. | Fyghte they cunne, with wurdes lowde, | And telle, no man is her pere; | But, when they come to the



myster, | And see men begynne strokes dele, | Anon they ginne to turne her hele; | And gunne to drawen in her hornes, | As a snayl among the thornes,' Richard Coer de Lion, 3824-36, & 5625.

22. *at*. Comp. 'A woman is bothe warre & wyse | Grette loue & lykynge in them lyse | Who lyste to lere at there lore,' Ipomadon, 7088-90. But the usual preposition is *on* or *upon*; 'I wol leue my lay | And on þi lore lere,' Horstmann, A. L., i. 207/262; '3if þou wilt leue ppon mi lare,' Amis, 356. In the Cursor Mundi there are three variations of the phrase; 'lere on noe lare,' 1832, 'þai louted til his lare,' 4683 MS. Fairfax; 'To leten on his lare,' 15614; and the last occurs in Small's Metrical Homilies with *at*; 'When we thynk how thaȝ sall far | That wyll noȝht lete at Cristes lare,' p. 66. The uncommon construction without any preposition occurs in 'For Eue hadde leued his lore,' Horstmann, A. L., i. 142/247, and Early English Poems (Phil. Soc.) 5/verse 35.

23. This line is literally, It needs for you now to bend no bows, i.e. You need now bend no bows, you may give up fighting. *Thar* is impersonal, and *þow* is the dative of the agent. Comp. 'Him thar not winnen wel, that evil doth,' Chaucer, quoted in Koch, ii. p. 33. Dr. Eikenel (Anglia, vii. Anz. p. 112) explains, No bows need now bend for you, or, taking into account the confusion between *purfen* and *durren* in M.E., venture to bend. But this would require *purfen* and would not be idiomatic. Scholle's alteration, No bowes er for þow bende, is unnecessary. Cancel the latter half of the note under the text.

25. *bare*, deprived of. See a collection of examples of this common alliterative phrase in Amis, p. xlix. Others are, 'Quo his bidding brekes, bare is of blis,' Anturs of Arther, xix.; 'The ixthe day wyth mekyll care | Maketh us of blysse bare,' The 15 Tokens, 217-8 (Anglia, iii. p. 538); William of Palerne, 3958.

27. *mis*, fail to get. Comp. 'Mi merci sal þou neuer mis,' Cursor, 17202.

30. *to fote*, at the feet of your people. See iv. 59, note; and comp. 'All fell him down to fote and hand,' Cursor, 680 (*fete* in 11450); 'Y wol the serve to hond and fot,' Alisaunder, 6726; Sir Tristrem, 902 note.

31. *were*. Scholle suggests that this word = *weder*, ram, battering ram, but this meaning would not go well with *wrote*, to turn up with the snout. Besides *weder*, Goth. *wiprus*, O. S. *withar*, O. H. G. *wider*, etc., all retain the dental. *Were* is war here as in vii. 71. Comp. 'Bot herder were to þe es wroght,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 106/64 (where the original, the Aurea Legenda, has 'sed majora tibi debentur pro fide Christi certamina,' from Horstmann, Barbour, i. p. 193); and 'Where this Geant were procured and wrought,' Partenay, 4056. *Werc*, fortification, is combined with the same verb as in 'I wyll þou wyrke, with-owten

weyn | A warke to saffe þi-selfe wyth-all,' York Plays, 41/35-6; the corrupt line, Sir Gowther, 324, may be restored, Of the werc well wroȝt. The siege was remarkable for the engines which were used by the besiegers. Firearms were first employed there to any great extent. 'Sire Edward nostre roy fist faire assault à la dite cyté de Torneye sis foithe (= fois) le jour ove springals et magnels gettauntz grosses pierres, engyns ove poudres, feu rosée, issint qe les engyns ove les grosses pieres debriserent les toures et les fort mures,' A French Chronicle of London (Camden Society, 1844), p. 79. Lettenhove, Froissart, iii. p. 496.

32. With which to undermine your walls. For the ipversion of the word order, comp. 'þat I seke myȝt anoynt wiþ be,' Cursor, 17936.

34. Comp. 'No more dowte the dynte of theire derfe wapyns,' Morte Arthure, 312.

35. See ii. 20, note.

41. in land is a mere alliterative tag, like the frequent *on mold*. Comp. 'þat lorde þat lennes vs lyffe | To lere his lawes in lande,' York Plays, 52/219; 'God let me neuyr dye in lande,' Guy, 5841, and the collection of examples in the note.

43. at hand, near. Comp. 'And now is nedfull for noye, þat neghis at hond,' Troy Book, 11537.

47. See v. 73, note.

48. or, ere, before. Shakspeare, Tempest, i. 2. 11, has *or ere*; see Koch, ii. § 516. broght on bere. Comp. 'In Surry he sall shew A syght | And in babyloñe bringe mony on one ber,' Bernardus, 20/67-8; 'Betwene them burgenyd such a bravnche | That in þer lyves schall neuer stavnche | Till they on bere be brought,' Ipomadon, 1268-70; 'Boldlye on bere they can them bringe,' Percy Folio MS., iii. 257/606.

51. haldes ȝow noght, does not keep his promises to you.

54. þe right gate, by the shortest way. Comp. 'þe graythest gate,' vii. 48; 'They ryde the ryght gate | Even to the castell yate,' Lybeaus, 1516-7; 'þou shalt ride sporeles o þy lyard | Al þe ryhte way to douere ward,' Bōddeker, Alt. Dicht., 100/46-7.

56. To bar Philip the way. Ful still is a tag. Comp. 'Be he never sō mych a shrewe, | Heys nedes schul be sped, | Ful styll,' Poem on Edward II (Percy Society), p. 4; Sir Tristrem, 1461, 2704.

60-70. John the Third of Brabant was one of Edward's principal allies. His conduct had all along been marked by great caution and a determination to secure himself in either event of the war. During his first negotiations with Edward, and while making preparations to join him, he sent repeated assurances of his loyalty to Philip, and deputed one of his chief counsellors, Louis de Cranehem, to the court of the French king to neutralize the bad effects of any reports which might reach Philip from Brabant. 'Ainsy vouloit le dit duc de Brabant nager

entre deux yawes,' Le Bel, i. pp. 136, 147-151. The poor counsellor became so ashamed and confused at the manifest contradiction between his statements and the acts of his master that he did not venture back to Brabant, but died of grief in France. After much shuffling the duke joined Edward and was present at Flamengerie with a large force, but he had apparently given Philip some reason to count on his defection. At Tournay his followers, who formed a large part of the allied forces, were placed next to the English troops, because, as Lettenhove thinks, of Edward's distrust of his ally. This Villani says (xi. c. 112) was well founded. But Froissart and the Flemish chroniclers do not connect him with the abandonment of the siege. Le Bel tells at length how the men of Brussels received money from Philip and distributed it among the captains of the Brabançons, who thereupon told the duke they would not remain any longer in the field. He however acquits the duke of all complicity in the affair; he describes his confusion when he discovered the intrigue and the punishment he inflicted on certain of Philip's agents when they fell into his hands afterwards (i. p. 175-194). Villani also speaks of the effect of Philip's money, but he sets down the corruption of the men to the bad example of their leader; 'Ma i Brabanzoni sentendo il trattato che menava il loro duca, et per la corruzione della moneta del re di Francia . . . feciono punta falsa, e subitamente si levarono da campo et tornarono in loro paese.'

62. *brwed pat bale*, devised that mischief. See Maetzner under *brewen*, 2. for examples, and comp. 'Rouland wiþ durindale | Brewen him miche bale,' Roland and Vernagu, 560-1; 'Him þoughte to brewen him a bale | wel ille,' Celestin, 228, 9 (Anglia, i. p. 73); 'And us is brewed þis harde bale | þat we shal boþe be forlorn,' Body and Soul, 351-2 (Anglia, ii. p. 239); 'Alas! y am worsse than wode | Myn owne bale for to brewe,' Political, Relig. and Love Poems, 100/213-4; Octavian, 53/1707.

63. 'Les Brabanchons s'en commencèrent à aler hastivement, car grand désir en avoient,' Le Bel, i. p. 190.

65. *On his side*, a mere alliterative tag which repeats *him*.

66. I have not found any other example of this phrase. Wright explains *gale* as song, noise, which gives no sense here. It is perhaps connected with Icel. *galli*, fault, flaw; Dan. *gal*, wrong; Swed. *gall*, sterile; Eng. dialectic *gall*, a spot in a field where the crop has failed. If so it might mean wrong, mischief. The word occurs again in, 'þo sede he icham a deuel: ich hote belial, | Ajen ech mannes good dede: ich can do luþer gal,' Seyn Julian, 83-4, which Maetzner gives under *galle*, *gall* (A.S. *gealla*) a word distinct from the former, but probably connected with it.

67. For the alliteration comp. 'Nay, sir, we will oure batells guy, |

And rape vs for to ryde,' Rowland and Otuell, 254-5; P. Plowman, c. 349/48.

68. Till dede. If this is taken literally, 'to his death,' as Wright explains it, it is unhappy, for the duke of Brabant did not die till 1355. It may however be used freely and poetically for 'so as to come to grief.' But *rede*, counsel, plotting, would restore the alliteration and give a good sense. For the phrase, comp. 'At morne þei toke to rede | And soteltes vp soght,' York Plays, 341/113-4; 'þe Iwes token hem to red,' Engl. Studien, ix. 46/239; 'þe traytours of Scotlond token hem to rede, | þe barouns of Engelond to brynge to dede,' Böddeker, Alteng. Dicht., 133/225-6; Laȝamon, 19239; Horne Childe, p. 289, mostly in a bad sense. *Radly* in the previous line would restore the internal alliteration of *d* in the three words.

70. This accusation against Edward's German allies occurs pretty frequently in contemporary writers. So, John of Bridlington, 'Strident Germani nummorum tempore sani, | Frendent Barbani (Brabançons) ambo nummis sine vani,' Wright, Pol. Poems, i. p. 146. On the other hand, Lettenhove, speaking of the Flemish at Tournay, says, 'Tous ces bourgeois, que leurs ennemis accusaient d'être excités par l'or des Anglais, avaient déclaré qu'afin de venir en aide à la cause du pays, ils voulaient servir sans solde,' La Flandre Communale, p. 205.

71. *frely fode*, a nobly nurtured one, a common epithet in the romances for a courteous knight or lady. See Amis, p. xlix. for a collection of examples; others are, 'þaa fals, þaa felun fode,' Cursor, MS. Gött., 16452; Sir Tristrem, 193, 369, 2987; Sir Percival, 38; Bruce, iii. 578. Mätzner explains it as food, *alimentum*, extended to mean that which is fed, *alumnus*. To *feed* has the sense of 'to educate' in 'Nas neuer non fairer fedde,' Sir Tristrem, 161; 'fat freoly ys to fede,' Böddeker, Alteng. Dicht., 157/45; 'Farwelle, the frelyst that ever was fed,' Towneley, Plays, p. 171.

75. Comp. 'Ffor hym that ryste on the rode,' Awntyrs of Arthure, 230.

77. *main and mode*, might and main. Maetzner, Alteng. Sprachproben, i. p. 38, gives examples from A. S. poetry. Comp. also, 'Scho blewe hir horne with mayne and mode,' Thomas of Erceldoune, 251, 279, 362; 'And len vs, lord, swilk mode and mayn | þat we tak neuer þi name in vayn,' Cursor, 25227-8; 'þou sal hir serue wit mode and mayn,' id. 2624; Ywaine, 1031.

## VII.

**Edward's March through Normandy. The Battle of Crécy.**

Edward embarked at Porchester on the 2nd of July, apparently with the intention of going to Gascony. But being prevented by contrary winds he altered his plans and disembarked on the 12th of July at La Hogue to march to Calais. He rested his troops there till the 18th, his fleet in the meantime burning Barfleur. On the 18th he reached Valognes, on the 20th he was in Carentan, and two days later at Saint-Lô. On the 26th he reached Caen, a town bigger in Michael de Northburgh's opinion than any in England, except London. It was vigorously defended by the inhabitants and a considerable body of soldiers gathered there under the Comte d'Eu, the Constable and the sire de Tancarville. The fight was hottest at a bridge which connected the halves of the town. At last, but not without considerable loss, the English remained in possession of the place, where they stayed three days, and found the famous agreement made in 1338 between the Normans and Philip for the conquest of England. From Caen they proceeded to Lisieux, which they reached on the 3rd of August. Meanwhile Philip had assembled a large force at Rouen which occupied the right bank of the Seine and destroyed the bridges. Edward still advancing on the left bank to find a place to cross the river came to Rouen, and burnt Louviers, Vernon, Verneuil, and Pont de l'Arche. On the 14th he reached Poissy, and finding the bridge broken here also, he decided to stay and repair it. While this was being done the English made raids right up to the gates of Paris. On the day of his arrival at Poissy, Edward had received an offer of combat from Philip, to which he had replied that he was going in the direction of Montfort, and that if any one wanted him he could be found there. Philip, thinking that Edward was going to the south, fell back to Antony. Meanwhile the bridge was repaired, and on the 16th Edward crossed to the right bank and beat the communes of Amiens (l. 93) who were marching to join Philip's army south of Paris. The English now proceeded due north to Calais, passing by Beauvais, Poix, and Airaines, while Philip followed hard in pursuit till he halted at Amiens and received reinforcements, bringing up his army to 100,000 men. When the English reached the Somme they found the enemy everywhere in force on the right bank, and they marched towards its mouth only to find the bridge at Abbeville strongly held. At last they succeeded in crossing the ford of Blanquetaque notwithstanding the resistance of Godemar du Fay and his 12,000 men. Philip, coming up soon after, learned that the English had succeeded, and he returned to the bridge

at Abbeville. Edward meanwhile marched towards Crécy during the 25th. The battle followed on the 26th. On the next day two large detachments of French soldiers marching to join Philip were met by the English and defeated with great slaughter. (Avesbury. Nangis. Chronique Normande. Chronique d'un Bourgeois de Valenciennes. Le Bel. Froissart. There is a good account of the battle in Louandre, Histoire d'Abbeville, 1834, pp. 129-157; much of it is given in a paper, Archaeologia, xxviii. p. 171.)

The comparative length of the poem is noteworthy; like viii. it may have been formed by the fusion of two ballads originally distinct. But no joint is perceptible at l. 101, where the new topic, Crécy, is introduced. The stanzas are linked together throughout the poem, except at 92, 93, where the break perhaps indicates the loss of one or more verses. The last stanza is plainly a later addition intended to connect this with the next poem; the abruptness of the past tense in l. 167, and the introductory formula in l. 169 point to this.

1. The romance writers frequently refer in this way to their sources, real or imaginary. Comp. 'Her may 3e here yn romaunce ryst,' Octavian, 57/1811; 'As it is wryten in Romance | And founden in bookes of Antiquyte,' Sowdone of Babylone, 25-6; 'As the boke of Rome doth tell,' Torrent of Portugal; Amis, p. xliii. The same meaning is conveyed by 'Thus seyde the Frensch tale,' Launfal, 474. The term *Romani* was applied by writers of the fourth century to all who lived within the limits of the Empire, and as early at least as the fifth century *Romania* appears as a common name for the united Latin area. Hence *romanice loqui*, to speak the vulgar Latin as distinguished from the book language. So, 'Bien sannoit Aiols lire et enbrieuer | Et latin et romans sannoit parler,' Aiols et Mirabel, 275, 6.

2. The traditions which went by the name of Ambrosius Merlin's prophecies among the Welsh were probably first gathered and reduced to writing by Geoffrey of Monmouth about 1132 A.D. Towards the end of the century they found a commentator in the universal doctor Alanus de Insulis (Alain de Lille). The vague generalities of which for the most part they consisted were, with the residue of unwritten tradition, taken as the groundwork of new prophecies, or explained by the light of accomplished fact. The general body of prophecy thus set afloat was generally received by the English and French. So Langtoft expresses the popular feeling in his 'Ha, Deus! ke Merlyn dist sovent veritez | En ses prophceyz' (Wright's ed. ii. p. 264). In the MS. which contains Minot's poems there is a version which was plainly written with a view to discredit Henry the Fourth: it is printed in the Appendix, piece ii. (See for further information, San Marte (Schulz),

Die Sagen von Merlin, Halle, 1853; Villemarqué, *L'Enchanteur Merlin*, and Ward's Catalogue of Romances in the British Museum). There was another prophecy of Merlin Silvester called the prophecy of the Eagle, and recorded in Lives of Edward the Confessor (Rolls Series), p. 431. Of this some use is made by Giraldus Cambrensis in his *Expugnatio Hibernica*. See his works, vol. v. p. 40.

7. The passage in the *Vaticinium Merlini* which was generally taken as referring to Edward the Third, is, 'Superveniet aper commercii, qui dispersos greges ad amissa pascua revocabit. Pectus eius cibus erit egentibus, et lingua eius sedabit sitientes.' See Appendix ii, 143-188. Comp. also, 'Et bien le dist li rois Robers de Cecille, de Naples et de Jherusalem, que li senglers de Windesore ficerot encores ses dens moult parfont ens ès portes de Paris, et chils Edouwars est li senglers de Windesore ensi que dient les prophesies de Merlin selonch le livre de Bructus,' Froissart, Luce ii. p. 226. There is a remarkable poem printed in Bernardus (E. E. T. S. No. 42), p. 23, the prophecy of Thomas a Becket, written, I think, to encourage the English in the expedition of 1360. But ll. 106-144 are full of allusions to this campaign of 1346, to the siege of Calais, and the capture of king David at Neville's Cross. The prophecy of Thomas of Erceldoune, written in the beginning of the fifteenth century, has also several references to the events of Edward the Third's reign; and another prophecy relating to the Scotch wars of this time is printed in Langtoft's Chronicle (Rolls Series), ii. p. 452.

17. Comp. John of Bridlington, 'Sunt mihi materia de tauro plura notare,' Wright, *Pol. Poems*, i. p. 152.

19. *my wit es thin*, my ability is slight. Comp. 'The childes witt was fuille thynne,' Sir Percival, 275; 'Oc for I the so eise fond, | And thi wretche wit so thunne,' Maetzner, *Alteng. Sprach.* i. 97/229, 30; 'So is youre wyttes thyn,' Towneley Plays, p. 88; Langtoft, i. p. c.

21. *on bankes bare*. See viii. 20. The phrase is a reminiscence of the romances. Comp. 'To beker atte the barrens, in bonkes so bare,' Anturs of Arther, iv.; 'A Bore com from A bank wondirly boistous,' Roland fragment, 94; 'Now is roulond redy with his rout faire | For to abid at a bank with barons thar,' id. 232-3; 'This ber salbe buskede in A banke syde,' Bernardus, 27/127. If the phrase means much, it is, the boar has taken the field in open country.

23. *Iohn of France*, the duke of Normandy, the eldest son of Philip. Born in 1319, he became duke of Normandy in 1331, succeeded to the throne in 1350 and died in 1364. At this moment he was besieging Mont Aiguillon in Guienne; he abandoned it on the 20th of August to join his father. He reached Agen on the 23rd, and Moissac on the 25th, but the battle for which he was too late (l. 51) was fought on the following day (*Chronique Normande*, p. 276).

25. proper and prest, the nearest approach to this phrase I have found is 'prowde and preste,' Syr Tryamouré, 883.

34. *Hende God, þat heried hell.* For *hende*, gracious, thus applied, comp. 'Bot dryghtin dere þat ai es hend | A curtais wrak on þam he send,' Cursor, 2255, 6. The Harrowing of Hell, the descent of Christ into hell to set free the souls imprisoned there, was a popular subject in England from the eleventh century (ten Brink, *English Literature*, p. 111). The source from which it was taken was the apocryphal *Evangelium Nichodemi*. At least as early as the thirteenth century it was treated in a miracle play (Mall, *The Harrowing of Hell*; Böddeker, *Altengl. Dicht.* pp. 264-284, etc.), and the four cycles of religious plays contain each a drama on the subject (York *Mysteries*, p. lxiil.). Other evidences of its influence on M. E. Literature will be found in *Cursor Mundi*, ll. 18073-352; the long poem of Cotton, *Galba*, E. ix.; in the fine passage of *Piers Plowman*, C. 382/261-442 (on which see Skeat's note); in *þe Denelis Perlament*, ll. 233-416, and in *Death and Liffe*, Percy Folio MS., iii., 72/384-429. References to it are also frequent.

39. *Hogges.* Saint Vaast-de-la-Hougue, département de Manche, arrondissement de Valognes, canton de Quettehou.

41. They made a great display of strength against him. Comp. 'Wyste þou what maystres I couthe make | My service wold thou not forsake,' *Ipomadon*, 6400-1; 'Telle Berith and Bellyalle | To mar theym that siche mastry mase,' *Towneley Plays*, p. 246; 'i vndir-take | þat þer wille none swylke maystres make,' *Octavian*, 117/786-7.

45. *pride in prese.* See i. 90 and vii. 109. This is a favourite alliteration of the romance writers, comp. 'Pas agane, Porter, and let him swyith in | Amang the proudest in preis, plesand in pane,' *Coilyear*, 623, 4; 'And mony proud mon þer presed, þat prynce to honour,' *Gawayne*, 830, which show that *pres* means the throng of courtiers. But here and in i. 90, it means the confusion of battle, as is further shown by, 'And als for oure lemmanys luwe | Off pres yhit a poynt we pruwe,' *Wyntoun*, viii. 2569, 70; 'Wyth pes or pres sa sal we prowē | That sege to skaile or gere remove,' id. ix. 3041, 2. In such cases *proud* is probably a variation arising out of *proved*, and perhaps helped by a confusion with F. *preux*, O.F. *prou*, as in 'Prynces proved in pres,' Syr Tryamouré, 969; 'Let mee be proued as Prince in pres where I wend,' *Alisaunder* fragment, 1200. Other variations are 'To be proued for pris & prest of hemselue,' id. 6; 'There was mekyllē pres in pryde, | When eche man began to ryde,' Syr Tryamouré, 730, 1. See also Sir Tristrem, 57 note.

48. *Cane, Caen.* 'Et lors alerent droit à Caen . . . et le conte d'Eu à tout bien IIII. mil combatans et le conte de Tancarville prindrent à



garder la ville, ce que on appelle l'Ille, et là ot grande bataille et merveilleuse à la porte Sainte Pierre dessus le pont, mais la dicte ille estoit mauvement close et la rivière estoit basse, par quoy les Anglois entrèrent par plusieurs lieux en la ville et encloirent les François au dos qui combattoient au pont,' *Chronique Normande*, p. 75, 6. Minot's numbers in ll. 50, 55 are much exaggerated. The *stif on stede* is a mere *cheville*. The men who made so good a fight against the English were mostly burghers and therefore *pitaille*.

50. *stif on stede* is much the same as 'stout on stede,' i. 54. Comp. 'Mene that bolde were to byde | And styff appone stede,' Sir Perceval, 1471-2; Octavian, 158/1578. In this and other alliterative phrases *stif* alternates with *stith*, stout, brave, so 'Wiþ kniȝtes stiȝe on stede,' Sir Tristrem, 66, 3014 note; 'Gain hethin folk was stijf in stur,' Cursor, Cotton, 21382, where the corresponding line in MS. Fairfax has 'Againe heȝin folk stiȝe in stoure.' Comp. also Troy Book, 5474; Richard Coer de Lion, 1623.

53. if *pai war bolde*, notwithstanding their bravery, which gives a sufficient sense. But the analogy of such places as 'Thai broght the dwergh, that be ye balde,' Ywayne, 2781; 'And he was broȝer, be ze balde, | Of Polimius þat I of talde,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 123/341, 2, suggests that Minot may have used here the same formula of assurance.

58. *dancee*. This ironical use occurs eight times in Minot. Comp. 'They seyde, Syr, þe kyng of Fraunce | Myghte abate all þys daunce,' Octavian, 3/38; Towneley Plays, p. 205. But neither example is quite like Minot's use.

59. A detail after the manner of the romances. Comp. 'Some in the hals so hytte he, | That hed and helm fleygh into the see,' Richard Coer de Lion, 2561, 2; Langtoft, ii. p. 267.

64. See note on viii. 94.

65. with *sie pam soght*, attacked them with sorrow. *Soght* is used of meeting with hostile intent as in 'Lundy him saw and sadly on him socht,' Wallace, viii. 376. Comp. for the phrase, 'And therefore syte is to þaym sought,' York Plays, 29/16. So American slang, to go for.

68. 'Et quant les Englecqs eurent prins dedens la ville ce qui leur pleut, ils boutèrent le feu partout,' Le Bourgeois de Valenciennes, p. 219.

73. Minot probably wrote *lere* not *say*. Comp. 'Whom the lord that all thing can: leryd lely on his scole,' Hampole's Psalter 1/22; 'þere cursis lely for to lere,' York Plays, 9/18, 150/141.

74. Comp. 'Fadir and sone sall be dongen downe,' Thomas of Erceledoune, 411; 'To dinge sante Stewyne with stanis done,' Horstmann, Barbour, i. 22/512; Sir Perceval, 642; Sir Ferumbras, 5557.

78. As the bridge over the Somme at Abbeville was not broken down,

Cressy is almost certainly a scribe's error for Poissy. The mending of the bridge at the latter place was a remarkable incident in the campaign. Compare the account of the Bourgeois of Valenciennes, 'Et le roy d'Engleterre . . . fist ardoir Deu . . . jusques à Poissy où il trouva le pont romput et brisiet. Et la estoit le commun d'Amiens et ceulx des villes de là entour et des gens d'armes avoec eulx de par le roy de France qui gardoient le pas contre les Englecqs . . . et quant ils virent les Englecqs moult bien se deffendirent,' p. 222, 3. The activity of the French is also testified to in Avesbury, p. 129, 'Et sic dominus rex venit Pussiacum, ubi invenit pontem fractum, et adversarius suus citra Pussiacum non quievit.' From l. 81 one is led to suggest that Minot has confused together Poissy and Blanquetaque.

86. *of.* Comp. 'fforto felle of þe frigies felly he þoght,' Troy Book, 5875.

89. The town is Paris. Edward advanced to the gate of Nully and burnt the tower called Montjoye. The continuator of Nangis was an eye-witness, ii. 198.

91. This is after the romances. Comp. 'And he hit redde, y untherstonde, | The teres downe gan he lete,' Emare, 548, 9. I understand, I undertake to say, is used of confident belief, so, 'The dynt smot thorwgh the hethene herte, | I undyrstande it gan hym smerte,' Richard Coer de Lion, 5043-4; 'Ther Jesu for vs, y understonde, | Hys blood gan blede,' Octavian, 17/515-6.

98. *knokkes*, blows, as their reward. Comp. 'With peys, stones and gavelok, | Heore fon they gave knokk,' Alisaunder, l. 1620.

100. *staf ne stede*. A not common alliteration, but in 'A staf is nou my stede,' Specimens of Lyric Poetry (Percy Society), p. 48. A similar phrase is 'There helpud noþur helme noþere hatte,' Ipomadon, 5220.

101. 'Car les chevaulz des François, qui se sentirent feruz des saiettes, se prindrent à desroier et en chay mors pluseurs,' Chronique Normande, p. 81.

103. Comp. 'That cawsyd hur to wante hur wylle,' Le Bone Florence, 2111.

104. See viii. 79 note.

107. *cant and kene*, brave and eager. See v. 64, and comp. 'Knoute com with his kythe, þat kant was & kene,' Langtoft. i. p. 50; 'Of Knightes full kene & cant men of wille,' Troy Book, 2267; 'Iuus þat war sa cant and kene,' Cursor, 8943 C; Barbour, Bruce, viii. 280; York Plays. 183/183. These are all the examples of the combination I have met with.

108. *play and pride*. Comp. 'And Beues shold passe with pley and pride,' Beuis of Hamtoun, f. 131 b; 'For werdes welthe

and prid and play | Endes al wit ten and tray,' Small, Metrical Homilies, p. 43; 'Hir lust, her pride & al her play,' Hymns to the Virgin, 25/118. *Play* is used here ironically, just as *game* sometimes is.

109. See l. 45. This stanza is directed against William, Count of Namur, Henry, Count of Salm, John of Hainault, 'et grant fuissou de bonne bachelerie de Haynnau et d'ailleurs' (Froissart, iv. 398), who had formerly supported Edward, but were now on Philip's side. Minot says that if they were convinced of the justice of Edward's cause, they should at least refrain from fighting against him.

110. *prowd in pall*, an epithet of the romance writers. Comp. 'Knyghtes proud yn palle | He mette that selve day,' Lybeaus, 389-90; 'Princys, pruddust in palle,' Anturs of Arther, xxvi; Religious Pieces, p. 93. *Proude in pan* with the same meaning occurs in Sir Tristrem, 994. The array of princes and nobles on the French side at Crécy was unusually brilliant. 'Mais tant y avoit de gentils hommes sans les aultres que c'estoit une merveille de leurs riches adornemens veyr et regarder s'il y eult fait beau tamps et cler, mais il plouvinoit,' Le Bourgeois de Valenciennes, p. 231.

116. *on faire manere*, honourably, but generally courteously, as in 'And Rychard aunswerede in fayre manere,' Richard Coer de Lion, 704.

118. See vi. 20, note.

120. *cumberd all in care*. Comp. 'Thay saide a childe there shuld be borne | To by man kynde, combryd in care,' Towneley Plays, p. 274; 'She be not combrede ine-to more care,' Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 252/862.

123. See ii. 20, note.

126. *drewris dere*. The same combination is in, 'Sho was al dight with drewries der,' Ywaine, 1406.

133. *Franceis*, Frenchman. Laurencius Franceys occurs in a Subsidy Roll for Sussex in 1295. (Sussex Collections, xxiv. p. 67.)

135. *gapin*. So, 'Et sera de par moi celle ville gastée | Et ochise la gent gisant geule bée,' Wright, Pol. Poems, i. p. 14.

136. Comp. for the combination, 'E cointement fu detruissé | Par un treget sanz gile,' Wright, Pol. Songs, p. 62.

137. 8. may mean that the bishops performed well in the battle. The Bishop of Durham was one of the three leaders of the second division; he is said by the Bourgeois of Valenciennes to have rescued the Prince of Wales (p. 233). Comp. 'Hys lyff forsothe not longe lest, | For King Richard was hys preest,' Richard Coer de Lion, 5273, 4; Appendix, iv. 773-84; and note on ix. 30. But it might mean that some of them were killed there; Benis of Hamtoun, f. 140 b. has, 'flor sone thy songe shall be welaway.' Froissart says the Archbishop of

Rouen lost his life there, and Michael of Northburgh adds the bishop of Nîmes and the Archbishop of Sens, but they are wrong (Luce, Froissart, iii. p. lx.).

140. his dole, his share of the blows.

142. *Geneuaysse*, from F. Gêneveis, It. Genovesi; Genova being the Italian literary name for Genoa. Skelton has the same adj. 'That jentyll Jorge the Januay,' i. 127/35; it is ironical, for the Genoese mercenaries were a terror alike to friends and enemies. Six thousand of them took part in the battle, they were specially brought from some vessels at Harfleur under Ayton Doria. The night before the battle they were kept at Mautort and Rouvroi, they were not permitted to enter Abbeville lest they might sack it (Louandre, p. 128). They commenced the battle but were repulsed by the English archers, and Philip ordering the men at arms under the duke of Alençon to advance and cut them down ('Or tos, or tos! tués toute ceste ribaudaille, il nous ensonnient et tiennent le voie sans raison,' Froissart, v. p. 49), few of them escaped from the field. Those who got away were killed by the peasantry of Picardy as they wandered about (Luce, Bertrand du Guesclin, p. 157).

145. Le Bel in a remarkable passage, ii. p. 61-63, states his reasons for preferring the 'noble king,' Edward, to Philip. He charges the latter with cowardice, love of ease, leaning to the 'poor counsel of clerks and prelates,' and of crimes 'which ought to make him be less honoured by all.'

151. Comp. 'Fadir, he sayd, alle es wonne,' Octavian, 115/778.

157. 'Et Phelippe de Valois et le markys qu'est appellé le Élits des Romayns eschapèrent navrés à ceo que homme dist,' Avesbury, p. 139.

159. Perhaps we should read *with his trip*, i.e. troop. Comp. 'Whan he & alle his trip for nouht fled so tite,' Langtoft. i. p. 203, which translates, 'Kant of tut sun hoste à Gesorz fuyst,' Wright, Langtoft, ii. p. 118. But the text gives a good sense as it stands.

168. See viii. 24. note.

170. *king with croune*. A favourite phrase of the romance writers. Comp. 'Who was king wip croun,' Sir Tristrem, 5; 'Crist, crowned kyng that on cros didest,' Piers Plowman, C. 524/1; and the collection in Zielke, Sir Orfeo, p. 10.

## VIII.

### The Siege and Taking of Calais.

Edward left the scene of the battle on the 28th of August; he appeared before Calais on the 2nd of September. The town was

invested on the following day, and vigorous assaults were at first directed against it, but they were repulsed and Edward decided on starving out the garrison. The French cruisers, however, succeeded in relieving it, till the English fleet mustered in sufficient force to command the channel. Towards the end of June, 1347, John de Vienne, the captain of the town, sent out a letter to tell Philip that the besieged were reduced to the utmost straits. It was intercepted, but Edward forwarded it to Philip, who collected an army at Amiens and came to Sangatte on the 27th of July. Finding the English in a very strong position, he sent a challenge to Edward to meet him in the open field. Edward's answer is variously reported; according to his own account he accepted the offer for the 3rd of August, but Froissart says he declined to move. Philip, at any rate, retreated hurriedly on the 2nd of August, and the town yielded the next day. (The authorities are the same as those given for vii. In Luce, Froissart, iv. p. xxv, there is a note on the story of the devotion of Eustace de St. Pierre and his five companions.)

3. mirth on mold, joy on earth. Comp. 'So þat no murþe upon mold · no miȝt hem bet haue lyked,' W. of Palerne, 1012, 1316, 2478,

5. wight in wede. See v. 38. The men of Calais had made themselves particularly hated by the English for their piracies in the Channel.

8. ȝowre care es cūmen. Comp. 'Oure cares ar comen bothe kyne and colde,' York Plays, 30/46.

20. on bankes bare. See vii. 21, note.

21. als hund dose hare. So, 'þe soudan drof hem yn the feld, | As hond doþ þe hare,' Octavian, 48/1529, 30.

24-6. A small town grew up round Calais during the siege. 'Ains fist [Edowart] tantost faire son hostel de mesrien (= mairien, timber), et plances, et couvrir d'estrain (straw) pour là demourer tout hyver. . . . Chascun des seigneurs et chevaliers fit faire au mielx qu'il poent sa loge, l'ung de boys, l'autre de genests, les aultres d'estrain tant qu'en petit temps ilz firent là une forte ville et grande, et y trouvoit-on à vendre quanques on vouloit à grand marchié; et y avoit boucherie, hale de draps, et toutes marchandises aussy bien que Arras ou Anvers, car ilz avoient les Flamens de leur acord, dont tous biens leur venoient,' Le Bel, ii. p. 95.

29. walkes ful wide. Comp. x. 9; 'Your worde & your worchip walke; ay quere,' Gawayne, 1521; 'He leit no word than walk off his passage,' Wallace, ix. 29; 'The worde of him walkit baith fer and ner,' id. iii. 252; 'þe word of him welk al þe land,' Horstmann, A. L., ii. 35/43; Ipomydon, 131; Squyr of Lowe Degre, 520; 'The worde of his werkis thurghe þe worlde sprange,' Troy Book, 295; 'þe word of

ihesu was risen brade,' Cursor, 14000; 'Hys name ys spronge wyde,' Lybeaus, 264; 'pe dedes of þer hondes þorgh reames er ronnen,' Langtoft, i. p. 144; and Sir Gowther, 192, note.

33. Comp. 'pys frensche men buþ boþ lyther & fel,' Sir Ferumbras, 1535; and for the alliteration, 'For he was fers, prud, and fell,' Cursor, 2197; and ix. 7.

34. *dray*, an isolated instance of contracted *deray*, for which latter comp. Alisannder, 1961, and Sir Tristrem, 3165.

41. The Cardinals appointed by Pope Clement the Sixth to try to bring about a peace were Annibale Ceccano, bishop of Frascati (Tusculum), and Etienne Aubert, Cardinal of St. John and St. Paul, who was elected Pope (Innocent the Sixth) in 1352. The pope had already in February remonstrated with Edward for not listening to them (Avesbury, p. 148), but they again attempted to make terms when Philip's army arrived at Sangatte. Minot's distrust (ll. 37-40) expresses a popular feeling. In 1338, John Stratford openly impugned the fairness of the Cardinals who came to settle the differences between Edward and Philip (Walshingham, Ypodigma Neustriæ, p. 276). So P. Plowman's vicar, 'pe comune clamat cotidie 'eche a man to other, | "pe contre is þe curseder · þat cardynales come Inne,"' B. 363/414, 5. And in 21st Henry VIII, the Duke of Suffolk quoted as an old saw, 'that there was neuer Legate nor Cardynall, that dyd good in Englande,' Hall's Chronicle, ed. 1550, folio 183, a.

43. *in þat stede*, in that place. So, '& tuk conseil þat (*read at*) þe stede | Hou best þai mycht þis il remede,' Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 62/73, 4.

54. *loud or still*, under all circumstances. This phrase occurs frequently in the romances; comp. 'Fader, ichulle him serve at wille, | Erli and late, loude and stille,' Kyng of Tars, 229-30; 'To god hy cryde loude and styлле,' Octavian, 18/537; 'That thai and thairis, loud and still, | Suld be in all thing at his will,' Bruce, iii. 745, 6; Lay le Freine, 286; Sir Gowther, 175; Rowland and Otuell, 124; Castel off Loue, 994; York Plays, 163/150; Hampole, 3175, and many other places. Variants are, *at nessche & hard*, Sir Ferumbras, 3499; *moyste and drye*, York Plays, 217/521; *even and morne*, id. 113/33; *bifore and bihinde*, Horstmann, A. L. i. 153/209.

57. Comp. iii. 117, and see in Amis, p. xliii. a collection of similar phrases used in the romances to introduce a new division of the subject.

58. See note on i. 81.

59. The Bourgeois of Valenciennes describes the ceremony of surrender. 'Et le samedi au matin on mist les banières du roy d'Engleterre dedens le chastel et la ville de Callais aux tours et aux cresteaux, et le dimence après le jour Saint-Pierre entrant aoust, v jours au mois d'aoust, l'an mil III<sup>e</sup> et XLVII, entra monseigneur Gaultier de Mausny

dedens la ville de Callais entre luy et monseigneur de Beauchamp, et amenèrent monseigneur Jehan de Viane, chastelain du chastel et le capitaine de la ville, luy VI<sup>e</sup> de gentils hommes, par devant le roy d'Engleterre et son conseil tout parmy l'ost, en pur les chiefs et en pur les corps, leurs espées toutes nues tenans par les pointes, et les clefs de la ville et du chastel portant devant eulx en une lanche. Et quant ils vindrent devant le roy Édouart d'Engleterre et tous ceulx qui veoir les peurent, ils se mirent à genous en priant et requérant humblement merchy, en rendant la ville et le chastel, leurs corps et leurs avoirs, pour faire à la singulière volenté du roy d'Engleterre, et puis les fist le roy lever et passer oultre. Et tantost après revinrent VIII aultres hommes de Callais, IIII bourgeois et IIII mariniers en pur les corps et les chiefs nuds et tous deschaux, chascun ung cevestre en leurs cols, pour faire la volenté du roy. Et quant ils vinrent près du roy, ils prirent les chevestres en leurs mains et agenouillèrent devant le roy en priant merchy et mettant les cevestres ens leurs cols, pour faire la volenté du roy, de corps et d'avoir. Adont les fist le roy lever et les rechat en la manière que vous orez. Les chevaliers et les gentils hommes il envoia en Engleterre, où ils furent grande espasse en prison, et puis furent-ils recrus à renchon. Et les VIII furent rechargiet à monseigneur Gaultier de Mansny et à monseigneur Jehan de Beauchamp, et le chasteau et toute la ville à la volenté du roy d'Engleterre, et les ramenèrent en la ville. Et eult le roy en pourpos qu'il meteroit tous ceulx de Callais à mort; mais la royne d'Engleterre, comme bonne dame piteuse et sage, en eult moult grant pitié.' p. 259, 60. The English chronicle in MS. Harley 4690 omits mention of the queen's intercession, 'And anone þeighe wenten & towke a downe þe baners & the armes off firaunce on every side þat weren hongedde oute. And went vpon þe walles off þe towne in diuerse places as nakedde as þey werre borne saving her schertes and herre Breches & helden her swerdes nakedde and þe pointe in her handes downward and putten Ropes and halteres aboute her nekkes & yeldedde vpe þe keyes off þe towne & off þe castelle vn to þe king Edward wiþ grete ffere and drede off herte. ¶ And wanne þe king saugh þis as a mercyfulle lorde & king receyvedde hem alle in to his grace,' f. 83 a<sup>2</sup>. The halter on the neck was, no doubt, the regular sign of unconditional surrender; so the people of Galloway (Wyntoun, vii. 2872) come, 'wyth rapys and wethyis about thare hals.' Comp. also, 'Out com the wardayn Orgayl, | And an hundryd knyghtes in hys parayle, | Barefoot, ungyrt, withouten hood; | "Mercy, Thomas, spyll not our blood! | Take thee al the goods that we have, | With that thou wylt our lyves save, | Lett us passe away al nakyd,"' Richard Coer de Lion, 4151-7.

73-75. 'Car ils avoient eu sy grandes disettes d'excessives et urgentes

famines qu'il n'avoit demouré en la ville cheval à mengier, ne chien, ne chat, sorris, ne rats,' Bourgeois de Valenciennes, p. 260.

79. on, by. Comp. vii. 104, and 'It was wel sen apon þair sang | Mikel ioi was þam o-mang,' Cursor, 20677, 8 & 24333; 'þat was on Tristrem sene,' Sir Tristrem, 1205.

82. Jean de Vienne, 'gentils chevaliers vaillans as armes' (Froissart, v. p. 85) was the son of Jean de Vienne, seigneur de Pagny. He received a pension of 100 livres in 1338, and this was increased to 300 in 1340 and to 600 in 1348. He was captain of Mortagne in 1339-40, and he served in Brittany with the Duke of Normandy in 1341. He died at Paris in 1351.

94. barely, utterly, is probably what the poet wrote. Comp. 'But why are þe barely þus bræpe?' York Plays, 221/37. But we might have expected, *paire leders bargan may pai ban*. Comp. vii. 64; the collection of examples in Maetzner, *Altenglische Sprach.*, i. p. 362; and 'Ful sare þou sall þe bargan ban,' Horstmann, A. L. ii. 160/88; 'This bargayne schall þai banne,' York Plays, 155/279; 'That bargynne myght he banne,' Ipomadon, 1300, 3883, 5429.

## IX.

### The Battle of Neville's Cross.

The Scotch took advantage of Edward's absence to invade England. They probably acted at the instigation of Philip, who hoped that the English would thus be obliged to abandon the siege of Calais. The Scotch mustered at Perth. On their way south, they demolished the Pile of Liddel and killed Walter de Selby, the guardian. They then marched through Cumberland, burned Lanercost Abbey, and, keeping along the Tyne, sacked the abbey of Hexham, whence they proceeded by Ebbchester in the direction of Durham. But when they reached Bearpark (Beaurepaire, de Bello Reditu.), a foraging expedition under Sir William Douglas came up quite unexpectedly with the main force of the English and suffered a loss of five hundred men. The English then advanced to meet the enemy, and the battle fought near Durham on the 17th of October resulted in the total defeat of the Scots and the capture of their king.

The story of Queen Philippa's presence at the battle is due to Froissart, following and adding to Le Bel, who says she came to Newcastle on Tyne and mustered the English troops there. But a charter at Mons shows that she was at Ypres on the day of the battle (Luce, Froissart, iv. p. xi, note). Minot does not mention her at all, but he is equally silent as to Ralph de Neville and Henry de Percy,



'illustis miles, Titus, Hector, Brutus, Achilles,' as he is called in another poem on the battle (Wright, *Pol. Poems*, i. p. 45).

Besides the Latin verses printed by Wright in his *Political Poems*, there are two other poems on the battle which are reprinted from the MSS. in the Appendix, iii. iv. (*Chronicon de Lanercost. The Book of Pluscarden. Chronicon Monast. de Melsa.* The contemporary account written by Thomas Samson, a clerk in the diocese of York, printed in Lettenhove's *Froissart*, v. p. 489. The letter of John Fossour, prior of Durham to the Bishop of Durham, in Raine's *Letters from the Northern Registers*, p. 387. The best account of the battle will be found in *Archæologia Æliana*, N. S. vol. i. p. 271.)

1. *at distance* usually means, at enmity, hostile. But it gives a better sense here if taken literally, David fled before Edward Balliol when he appeared in Scotland in 1332. So the writer of the *Meaux Chronicle* begins his account of Neville's Cross in the same way with a reference to David's withdrawal to France: 'interea David de Bruyz, dictus rex Scottorum, qui a facie Edwardi de Balliolo quondam regis Scotiæ fugerat in Franciam' (*Chron. de Melsa*, iii. p. 60). It is true that David was only eight years old in 1332, and that he did not leave Scotland till 1334 (see note on ii. 22), though Wyntoun and Froissart put it down under 1332, and Hailes under 1333. Lines 3, 4 may be taken either of the battle fought on Dupplin Moor in 1332, at which David was not present, or of Neville's Cross fought on Bearpark Moor or rather the Red Hills close to it. 'Dicti vero Anglorum principes, pro bello omnibus conatibus se præparantes, in quadam mora prope Dunelmensem, quæ Mora de Beuerepair vocitatur locum pugnandi elegerunt,' *Book of Pluscarden*, i. p. 293. 4.

3. *north end*, northern parts. So in the *Seebuch*, p. 104, *nortende* with same meaning. Comp. also, '& al þene norð ænde: inæld to þan grunde,' *Lazamon*, 14001, 2; 'Alle þe North ende was in his kepyng,' *Langtoft*, i., p. 32.

6. *þe flowres þat faire war* is an allusion to the lilies in the arms of France. See xi. 3, and compare, 'The King Richard off Yngland | Wes in his flowris than regnand: | . . . Bot his flowris efftyre sone | Fadyt, and ware all undone,' Wyntoun, ix. 1787, 8; 1793. 4.

8. *has done þam to dwell*. *Dwell* here means to remain dead on the field, as in 'So sore strokes he them gave, | For evyr he dud them to dwelle,' Sir Eglamour, 47, 8; where *for evyr* gives the special force to the verb.

13. Comp. 'In saint Andrew he had swilk trist; | and of þat merk no-thing he myst,' Horstmann, A. L. ii. 8/289, 90. The plural

*merkes* is noteworthy; in the Seebuch *merke* always in the plural means a landmark for sailors.

15-18. 'Per idem tempus David le Bruse rex Scotiae, animatus per instigationem regis Franciae, cum Scotorum exercitu glomerato ausus est intrare Angliam, aestimans non remansisse in terra nisi clericos et pastores: autumabat enim omnem regni militiam cum ceteris viris defensoribus exisse regnum cum rege suo,' Chronicon Angliae, p. 23; 'Dicebat autem David quod hoc non posset esse; "non sunt," inquit, "in Anglia nisi miseri monachi, improbi presbyteri, porcorum pastores, sutores et pelliparii,"' Chronicon de Lanercost, p. 348; 'Nam suggestum erat eis quod non remanserant in Anglia quin omnes forent ad obsidionem Calesiae nisi solum agricolae ac pastores et capellani imbecilles et decrepiti,' Knyghton, p. 2590; 'Thai sayd, that thai mycht rycht welle fare | Till Lwndyn, for in Ingland than | Off gret mycht wes left na man, | For, thai sayd, all war in Frawns, | Bot sowteris, skynneris, or marchawns,' Wyntoun, viii. 6158-62. See also Appendix iii. 37-42, iv. 102-112. So in Scottish ffeilde, 96-110 (Percy Folio MS. i. p. 217) the French King incites the Scots to invade England, because 'there is noe leeds in that land: saue Millers and Masse priests, | all were faren into france: that fayre were in armes.'

23. *berebag*. See ii. 20 note. Le Bel says that there were forty-three thousand light horse on the Scotch side, 'car toutes les basses gens d'Escoce ont haquenées petites quant ilz vont en ost,' ii. p. 109.

25. *in þe waniand*. See v. 30, x. 6. *Waniand* is explained by Skeat (Etymol. Dict. p. 695) as the Northern present participle of M. E. *wanien* (but *wanande* *be* deficient, E. E. Psalter, i. p. 227, and again *wanand* *deficiendo*, and York Plays, 51/204), to wane, decrease, and as meaning in this phrase, the waning moon. This was considered an unlucky time for beginning any enterprise, but the Scots disregarding it met and decided to invade England about the day of the full moon, Tuesday, Oct. 3rd (Arch. Æliana, N. S. i. p. 274). The phrase comes, however, to mean quite generally, with ill luck, as in 'Weynde furthe in the wenyande,' Towneley Plays, p. 257, 13, 189, 241; 'We! Whythir now in wilde waneand,' York Plays, 36/45; 'Nowe walkis on in þe wanyand,' id. 319/388; 'Furth in þe wylde wanyand be walkand,' id. 336/485. Comp. too the variation 'Now in þe wilde vengeance ye walke with þat wight,' id. 291/545. The use of *wilde* in conjunction with *waniand* seems to be due to the influence of the phrase *will* or *wild* of *wane*, *will* *wanand*, mistaken in opinion.

28. Of necessity it behoved them to kneel.

29. William de la Zouche [now Souche] ('est pater invictus sicco de stipite dictus, for Zouche signifieth the stocke of a tree in the French-tongue,' MS. Cott. Julius, F. 11. f. 134 b.) was Lord High Treasurer in

1338. He became Archbishop of York in 1340 and died in 1352. He was one of the three commissioners of array appointed to assemble the Northern forces against the Scots, and he commanded the third line in the battle.

30. This is probably ironical like vii. 138. The Archbishop absolved the Scots with blows. See especially Appendix, iv. 181-4.

31. Dorem and Carlele probably mean the men of those towns. The Bishop of Durham, who had fought well at Crécy, was in France, and a description of the battle was sent him by the Prior of Durham. Le Bel is then in error in stating that he took part in the battle, and indeed his list is curiously wrong. John de Kirkeby, the Bishop of Carlisle, had distinguished himself the previous year in repelling a Scotch foray (*Chronicon Angliae*, p. 21), but although some of the chroniclers say he was present, the fact that his name does not occur in the list of twelve commanders who were specially thanked by the Regent on Oct. 20th (*Rot. Scot.* i. 675) is conclusive.

32. Comp. 'Wynnes wurschip, and wele, throge wy3tenes of hondus,' *Anturs of Arther*, xxi; 'Miche wirchippe he wane,' *Sir Perceval*, 11.

37. John of Coupland, 'apert homme d'armes et hardi durement' (*Froissart*, v. p. 128), was in Flanders in 1338. In the following year he had a pension of £20 for his services on the border, and early in 1347 he received £600 a year for life. In the same year he was made constable of Roxburgh Castle, and he was sheriff of Northumberland from 1350 to 1354. He was about to go on some distant expedition in 1359, when he made his will (*Surtees Society*, ii. p. 29). Five years later he was assassinated on Bolton Moor by John Clifford of Ewyas (*Dugdale, Baronage*, i. p. 341), whose lands were given to Coupland's widow (*Patent Rolls*, pp. 177 b and 181 a). Clifford was afterwards pardoned. There is an account of Coupland in *Archæol. Æliana*, N. S. i. p. 293. He did not capture David without a severe struggle, in which the Scotch King knocked out two of his teeth with a dagger: the account of the *Chronicle of Meaux*, 'fugiens captus est' (iii. p. 62) and of the poem in *Wright*, i. p. 46, 'Brus David auffugit, fugiendo contra leo rugit, | Coplond attingit fugientem, vulnere cingit; | Regem persequitur, David in spinis reperitur' is less probable. Le Bel (ii. p. 112) tells us that he was unwilling to give up his prisoner till Edward sent for him to Calais and made him a knight. Then David was transferred from Castle Ogle to London. For *wight man in wede*, see v. 38, note.

38. *Kend him his crede*, taught him an elementary lesson, so also xi. 14. Comp. 'Abate his pryde this ylk nyght, | And rekyn hym a crede,' *Towneley Plays*, p. 217, where one would expect to find *boost* for *pryde*, and *kenne* for *rekyn*.

43. *a schowre*, in abundance. The usual metaphorical meaning of

shower in M. E. is attack, tumult, pang, as illustrated in Zupitza, Guy of Warwick, 9206 note. But compare here, 'Shame þe mote by shoure,' King Horn, ed. Wissmann, variant on 332.

44. Comp. 'He dranc þe sure and i þe suete,' Cursor, 23979.

48. Iohn. See vii. 23 note.

50. he wakkind þe were. Comp. vi. 10, and 'Now wackons vp werre as ye shall note after,' Troy Book, 2046; 'As werre schold awake,' Lybeaus, 1095. *þat* held him self waken, that kept him self in trouble. Comp. 'Ma[r]kade held þam waken, & tok of þam tuenti,' Langtoft, i. p. 205; '& now is Acres taken þorgh R. þe conquerour, | His banere held þam waken was put [out] of o toure,' id. i. p. 179. I have not met the phrase elsewhere.

51. had he his brede baken, had he ruined himself, or, in similar slang phrase, been done brown. The meaning is shown by 'Hadd y þat stronge strok y-take! þou haddest to me ymynt, | For euere my bred had be bake! myn lyf dawes had be tynt,' Sir Ferumbras, 576, 7; 'Deep seiþ, my breed he haþ baken me, | Now schakeþ he his spere to smite me,' Hymns to the Virgin, 70/399, 400. *His*, that is, his own, seems necessary to the sense.

54. fayled þare, failed to appear in London, the appointed place of meeting.

56. For the alliterative formula of this line, comp. 'When all þir saws war said,' Evang. Nichod, Galba, E. ix. f. 61 b: '& sayde þan on his sawe,' Sir Ferumbras, 3740; 'Then sayde þe emperour yn hys sawes,' Horstmann, A. L. ii. 511/24; 'Avyse you of thise sawes sere,' Towneley Plays, p. 257.

60. kast me in care. See vi. 18, note.

63. While at Ryton on the Tyne, David was warned in a vision not to injure the territory of St. Cuthbert, or his expedition would end badly (Fordun, ed. Goodall, ii. 341). In the Rites of Durham (Surtees Society, xv.), pp. 20-23, it is related that on the night before the battle John Fossour, the prior of the Abbey, was commanded in a vision to put the holy Corporax cloth, which St. Cuthbert had used to cover the chalice when he said mass, on a spear point like a banner, and to go to the Red-hills on the following day and remain there till the end of the battle. He and his monks did so, and were miraculously protected against the attacks of the Scots. Shortly after the victory the cloth was placed in the centre of a banner (it had certainly formed part of a banner centuries before this, Reginaldi Libellus, Surtees Society, i. p. 83), 'which was never caryed or shewed at any battell but by the especiall grace of God Almightye and the mediacione of holie Saint Cuthbert it browghte home the victorie.' It was at the battle of Flodden. See for further details, Archæologia Æliana, N. S., ii. p. 51.

64. law gan pai lout. Comp. vi. 40, and, 'Ho that wyll wyth hym fyght, | Be hyt be day other nyght, | He doth hym lowe lowte,' Lybeaus, 721-3.

65. leued allane, remained alone on the battle-field. Leuid is the same as *bileuid*, vii. 101. Comp. '& skalyt his mene here & pare | Til he belewit al hyme-ane,' Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 15, 207, 9; '& scho alane lewit, glad & blyth,' id. ii. 9/499; 'pat ilke a mane presit to fle, | & lewit þe body it-alane,' id. i. 118/182, 3 where *body* may be nominative or accusative.

## X.

## Les Espagnols sur Mer.

Edward had done his best to conciliate the Spaniards. In 1346 he had caused special proclamation to be made that they were to be treated on land and sea like his own people (Delpit, Collection Générale, i. p. 70, 1). But the relationship which existed between the royal houses of France and Spain drew the latter into the conflict with England. The commander of the Spaniards in this sea-fight was Don Carlos de la Cerda, son of Don Luis de la Cerda, the nephew of Philip.

In November, 1349, a Spanish fleet had taken some English ships laden with wine either in the estuary of the Gironde or on the way to England, and killed the crews. Edward, hearing that a number of Spanish vessels was at Sluys, probably the same which had committed the outrage (Le Baker, p. 204), determined to punish them. They have reached such a pitch of pride, he says in a letter to the Archbishop of Canterbury (Rymer, iii. p. 202), that they threaten not only to destroy the English power on the sea, but also to conquer England. He accordingly gathered at Sandwich a fleet mainly from the Cinque Ports, and putting in it the flower of his nobility and the pick of his archers and men-at-arms, he stood out to sea. Meanwhile the Spaniards, hearing that Edward was waiting for them, hired men and prepared their vessels for the fight (l. 14). It took place on Sunday, the 29th of August, 1350, in sight of Winchelsea. After a desperate conflict the English won the day, and took a number of the Spanish ships, variously reported at 26 according to Walsingham, Hist. Anglic. p. 25, or 24 according to Avesbury, p. 185, or 14. These they found to be laden with merchandise, and especially Flemish cloth. (Froissart. Avesbury. Chronicon Galfridi le Baker de Swinbroke. An Account in Sussex Collections, vol. iv. p. 118, is valuable for its detailed information, chiefly about the vessels).

1. Compare with this formula of introduction, 'Spell yeit i wald speke if i cuth, | War ani mirthes in mi muth,' Cursor, 23945, 6; 'Mikel wald i mene and mote, | Wist i þat it me war bute | Ai to spell and noght to spede,' id. 23847-9; 'Then to speke myght I not spare,' Towneley Plays, p. 178.

2. *worthly in wede*. See v. 38, note.

3. *driuen to dale*, hurled to the grave. Comp. 'Deth him hadde driuen to grounde,' Horstmann, Celestin, 252 (Anglia, i. p. 73); 'Until that ded haves dreven tham down,' Ywaine, 4026; 'And passede þe brugge anon, and slowe to grounde,' Robert of Gloucester, i. p. 356. *ded all paire dede*. Comp. 'Nouicham to dethe y-dyht, | y-don is almy dede,' Specimens of Lyric Poetry (Percy Soc.) p. 51; 'All his ded wer done, did he no mor,' Roland fragment, 676.

4. *seegronde* is a rare word: it occurs in A Bestiary (E. E. T. S. No. 49) 16/517; Horstmann, A. L. i. 167/329; Horstmann, Barbour, i. 27/926. *Seegrund*, bottom of the sea, is in the Seebuch, p. 92, as also *myddelgrunt*, a sandbank between two channels.

5. *for all paire grete fare*. See vi. 20 note.

6. *waniand*. See ix. 25 note.

8. *with trompes and taburns*. See iv. 80, v. 29, and comp. 'With trompes and with mekille pryde,' Octavian, 145/1287; 'Tabours and trimpes þede hem bi | and al maner menstraci,' Sir Orfeo (Zielke) 299, 519.

9. *weremen* is not in Stratmann. It occurs again in Wallace, viii. 1168, but nowhere else so far as I know. *walked full wide*. See viii. 29, note.

10. *in holl*, in the hold. Other examples with this special sense are, 'Bathe schip maistir, and the ster man also, | In the holl, but baid, he gert thaim go,' Wallace, ix. 121, 2; 'Than Wallace said, "Her is men off mar waill | To saili thi schip, tharfor in holl thow ga,' id. x. 824, 5. It has a wider meaning in, 'Thus to þe se þai maid þaime bowne | Into þe holl of wyntir richt,' translating *in profundo yemis*, Horstmann, Barbour, ii. 275/1694, 5.

14. *hurdis*. Maetznar wrongly treats this word as the plural of *hurde*, but gives no instance of the singular word, in spite of O. H. G. *hurt*; and his examples should be placed under *hurdice* or *hurdace*, L. L. *hurdicium*, and treated as singular. The *hurdis* is a rampart of woodwork erected on the bulwarks of a vessel to shelter the crew in actual combat. When the ordinary merchant ship was fitted out for warlike purposes, it was fortified in this way (see the account for boards, nails, &c. in the Liber Contrarotulatoris, p. 60, 72); on the war galleys the "*hurdis*" was sometimes moveable and could be fitted up just before the action. One French name for such a defence was *pavesade*,

because it had replaced the range of shields (*paveis*). But it is just possible here from the poet's phrase, 'they hanged their hurdis on high,' that he is thinking of similar fortifications built round the castles on the masts. The Spaniards on this occasion equipped their vessels specially for the fight, as they apparently relied on the missiles they discharged from the tops; 'gros barriaus de fier forgiés et fais tout faitis pour lancier et pour effondrer nefes . . . et avoient, amont les mas, chastiaux *breteskiés* pourvus de pierres et de cailliaus pour jetter,' Froissart, v. p. 259; for *breteskiés* comp. 'On disait, dès le XI<sup>e</sup> siècle, *bretescher* pour fortifier, garnir de creneaux de bois ou de hords,' Viollet-le Duc, Dictionnaire de l'Architecture française, under Bretèche.

15. *west*, yet the English sailors, as it seems, were mostly from the Cinque Ports. *neghed pam nerr*, a common alliteration; comp. 'It puttes oway all oure powere | So þat we mai noght negh it nere,' Horstmann, A. L. ii. 61/315, 6 and 139/121; 'Suffer me to neghe the nere | And kys thi fete,' Towneley Plays, p. 268; York Plays, 23/38; Ywayne, 596; Wyntoun, i. 1160; *nerr* is comparative, nearer.

16. *gert pam snaper*. Comp. 'the foly of the ful garis hyme snapyr, quhen he venis to stand,' Ratis Raving, 23/773, 4.

17. *ffer might pai noght flit*. An uncommon combination, but comp. 'Nay, feynde, thou shal be feste | That thou shalle flyt no far,' Towneley Plays, p. 252; 'And forþi, bot þou flit þe fere,' Horstmann, A. L. ii. 97/49; 'My fiadir thynkis to flitte full ferre,' York Plays, 47/58.

19. *Boy with pi blac berd*. This is plainly an allusion to Barbenaire, or, as he is more commonly called, Barbenoire, Blackbeard, the noted pirate of Genoa (see p. 58), who commanded the Genoese galleys at Sluys. Villani, in his account of that battle, describes him as 'Barbanero di Porto Venere grandi corsali,' vi. p. 205; Meyer 'Barbanarius quidam,' f. 141 b; Mezeray, i. p. 774, 'Teste noire Geneuois.' He seems to be the same person as the Pierre dit Berbenaire (or Berbeyaie) who in 1337 had 100 'livres tournois' given to him by Philip, and a further donation in 1342, with a view to induce him to live in France; but this seems doubtful. The Barbenaire who was at Sluys some would have identified with Egidio Boccanegra, the brother of the first doge of Genoa, the famous Simone Boccanegra. In 1340, Egidio entered the service of Alphonso XI, king of Castile; and in 1344 he greatly distinguished himself at the taking of Algeziras. In this year he offered to enter Edward's service. But the negotiations came to nothing, and he was made Admiral of Castile and Count of Palma ('Et qui navali vicit certamine Mauros | Aegidius regnis additus Hesperiiis,' Vberti Folietae Clarorum Ligurum Elogia, in Graevii Thesaurus, i. p. 800). In 1346 a convention was made between him and the king of France, in which

he agrees to serve Philip with 200 ships against every one except the king of Castile and the Genoese. He defeated the English off La Rochelle in 1371. There is no ground for thinking he was present at the fight here commemorated by Minot. *I rede þat þou blin.* Comp. 'Of thy lokyng, I rede, thou blyne,' *Ipomydon*, 450.

21. were on, fight against. For the preposition comp. 'Bot werand on þe wrang þai wan,' *Cursor*, 20004.

23. *kindels pi care.* See ii. 10, note.

24. Comp. ' & do þe Scottis deie & þer pride asuage,' *Langtoft*, i. p. 114; and for the latter half of the line, 'þai dump in the depe and to dethe passe,' *Troy Book*, 13289.

25. This line, no doubt, refers to the depredations of the Spanish fleet in November of the previous year, when, starting from Guernande in Brittany, they plundered English vessels coming from Bourdeaux with wine and killed their crews. Custom, originally a 'duty' or 'payment on merchandize' here means ironically piratical exactions, and with care is little more than a *cheville*.

27. *gude reson and right.* The phrase is always, *reason and right* without any adjective. Comp. 'And on the morowe they went to chirch | Godes service for to werch, | As yt was reson end ryght,' *Sir Cleges*, 163-5; 'And þarfor it es reson and ryght | þat þai ay se þat gryselly syght,' *Hampole*, 6891, 2; *Morte Arthure*, 2041; *Troy Book*, 8935, 10715; *Percy Folio MS.*, iii. 463/106, and 67/260.

## XI.

### The Taking of Guines.

The town of Guines was surprised by the English in January, 1352, and probably between the 6th and the 22nd. For we know that the captain of the town, Tassard de Bouvelinghem, was absent at the time of its capture, and he assisted at the first festival of the Order of the Star on the former date; while Avesbury tells us it was taken towards the festival of St. Vincent, which fell on January the 22nd. The hero of the enterprise, which was carried out during a truce, was an archer of Calais, John of Doncaster. According to Geoffrey le Baker, he had been a prisoner in Guines, and had escaped to Calais by means of a submerged wall built across the principal ditch of the town for the use of fishermen entering or leaving the town when the gates were shut at night. He soon found thirty associates in an attempt on the town. Coming to the place at the dead of night, they crossed the ditch and scaled the walls unperceived. The few soldiers on guard who resisted them were put to the sword, and the garrison was surprised in their hall or in bed, and



permitted to depart unmolested. The captors afterwards sold the town to Edward. This account, which represents the affair as a private enterprise, and is evidently that accepted by Minot, receives support from a document printed by Delpit, *Collection Générale des Documents Français qui se trouvent en Angleterre*, vol. i. p. 77, and Palgrave's *Antient Kalendars*, i. p. 173. It is an indenture dated 14th of March, 1352, between Robert de Herle, Captain of Calais and others on the one part, and John de Dancastre and his associates at Guisnes on the other part for provisions purchased at 4000 gold nobles, that is for some part of the abundant store which the adventurers found in Guisnes. (Avesbury, p. 188.) But Froissart simply says the place was sold to the English and John de Beauchamp, Captain of Calais (v. p. 306). Le Bel gives as the price, 34,000 ecus (ii. p. 170); and the *Chronique Normande* (p. 102) tells us that the traitor, Hue de Beauconroy was afterwards torn asunder at Saint Omer. By other writers the loss of the town is connected with the murder of the Constable Raoul, Count of Eu and Guines. He had remained a prisoner in England since his capture at Caen in 1346 (p. 72). About this time he was allowed to return to France to raise his ransom, and was put to death on the 18th of November 1350, by the king without trial. When his vassals heard of it, they handed the town over to the English (the *Chronicon Galfridi le Baker* gives the most detailed account; it is followed by Stow. Avesbury. Froissart, Luce's ed. iv. p. xlviii. *Chronique Normande*. Villani).

Minot's poem should be compared with the description of the taking of Lochleven Inch by Wallace, Blind Harry, ix. 1162, and of the surprise of Perth by Bruce in Barbour, ix. 364. In the former is a striking parallel to ll. 22, 3 of our poem. Ramsay and his friends are wondering at Wallace's disappearance: 'As thai about was talkand on this wyss, | A message com, and charyt thaim to ryss. | "My lord," he said, "to dyner has you cald | In till Lochlewyn, quhilk is a ryoll hald. | Ye sall fair weyll, tharfor put off all sorow." | Thai graithit thaim rycht ayrlly on the morow; | . . . Thai lugyt thar till aucht dayis was at end; | Off meit and drynk thai had inewch to spend,' ix. 1213-18, 1221, 2.

In this, as in the last poem, the fifth line of each stanza is linked to the fourth by the repetition of some prominent word, or as in x. 23 by the use of a synonym like *care* for *bale*. The last stanza of xi. is possibly imperfect.

2. *pat*. Minot hardly said that if the winter were away the summer would come; but if the winter were away and the summer were come, the lily and the leopard would meet. *pat* has probably been shifted by

the scribe from line 3, and its place filled by *both*. Perhaps we should read *when*, and *pat* at the beginning of l. 3.

3. This probably means that the next campaign will be decisive, and the two countries will be united under one king, as the arms will be combined in one coat. So in 1329 the king's envoys, Adam Orleton and Roger Northborough, said in the opening of their speech to the French king, 'Ce fameux Prophete Merlin à la veue duquel les plus memorables euenemens des choses humaines ont esté clairement presens, nous a distinctement marqué dans ses predictions, qu'au temps où nous sommes, les Lys & les Leopards seroient vnés dans vn mesme champ, & que les nobles Royaumes de France & d'Angleterre n'auoient plus qu'un mesme Monarque,' Mezeray, Hist. de France (ed. 1643), i. p. 752. In this view, the *grene* would mean the *champ*, the heraldic 'field.' Edward had already in 1337 quartered the arms of France, 'Edwardus, rex Angliae, qui se regem Franciae nominabat et arma Francorum cum suis jam permixerat, scilicet lilia et leopardos,' Nangis, ii. 196. John of Bridlington suggests, however, another meaning for *geder*, to meet in battle, in his lines, 'Conjunget flores leopardis deliciarum, | Per pugnatōres dum regnum quæret avarum, | Coniuncti flores leopardis deliciarum, / Annos guerrarum tibi monstrat posteriores,' Wright, Pol. Poems, i. p. 147.

4. *haue minde of pi man*, remember king Edward. Comp. 'For to mynne on his mon his meth *pat* abydez,' Cleanness, 436; 'For loue of Adam, by man, | *pat* þow on him wilt haue mercy,' Horstmann, A. L. i. 135/879, 80; 'Haf now mercy of þy man, & hys mys-dedes,' Patience, 287; 'To the y crie ant callé, thou here me for thi man,' Specimens of Lyric Poetry (Percy Soc.) p. 93.

5. *I mak þe my mone*, I pray thee. So 'To þe, lord, I make my mone,' Horstmann, A. L. ii. 356/2, and 215/177; 'And whan ich make mone to God *memoria* ich hatte,' Piers Plowman, C. 292/186.

8. *was wikked for to win* is much the same as Langtoft's '*pat* castelle was fulle strong & ille for to wyne.' i. p. 181. For *wikked*, difficult, comp. 'Morgan is wikk to slo,' Sir Tristrem, 775: 'wikked way' is the regular translation of 'mala uia,' comp. 'This were a wikked way · but who-so hadde a gyde,' Piers Plowman, B. 93/1.

13. Froissart mentions 'ung bon escuier que on appelloit Jehan Dancastre' as having been made Chatelain of Bourg in 1345 (iv. 304). But Geoffrey le Baker speaks of him as being an archer. He may be the person to whom the King makes a grant of lands belonging to the Earl of Warenne, 5 Edw. III. (Abbrev. Rot. Orig. ii. pp. 52, 55), but nothing further is known of him.

14. *ken þam paire crede*. Comp. ix. 38.

15. *stirt*, said of sudden and rapid movement. Comp. 'Bot i haue

a wele rinand page, | Wil stirt thider right in a stage,' Ywayne, 1068.

18. for all paire grete fare. See vi. 20, note.

20. pat put pam fro pine, that saved them trouble, helped them in their attempt. Comp. 'franche men put pam to pine,' vii. 77.

21. fyne, apparently to come to terms, or perhaps, to cease from resistance. It has a quite different meaning, to die, in x. 17.

22. pare wald pai dine. See the Introduction. Stow, translating Le Baker, p. 215, tells us that when they had got possession of the town 'they tooke oute the Englishmen that had bene taken the yeere before, and there kept in prison; and after they had relieved them well with meate and drinke, they made them guardens over them that had them in custodie.' (Ritson, p. 149.)

26. Since the capture of Calais, Guines had become important to the French as a check on the English garrison of the former place. 'Istud fortalicium solebat Anglicis obturare viam in patriam superiorem, prae-bens patriae magnam securitatem a forariis Calesiae,' Le Baker, p. 217. It retained this importance afterwards when in the hands of the English; see the Chronicle of Calais (Camden Society), p. 203. kindeld pi care; see ii. 10, note.

31. Saint Omer lies about twenty-one miles to the south-east of Calais. It was a favourite resort of the Flemish exiles, and its garrison had frequent encounters with that of Calais. In 1349, Geoffrey de Charny and Eustache de Ribemont had made an unsuccessful attack on Calais from it, and were taken prisoners. They were ransomed, and returned to Saint Omer in 1351, and as it seems, soon after, in June, defeated and took prisoner the Captain of Calais, John de Beauchamp. Minot regards the capture of Guines as a set-off to this success, over which they were too jubilant.

34. boun 3ow to biker. Comp. 'And latte Rowlande thedire Ryde | pat ever to Bekyre es bayne,' The Sege off Melayne, 185, 6. For *habyde* and *bede* in l. 35, see v. 40, note.

40. haue heuin till his mede, as his reward. Comp. viii. 2; and 'yf þey wyll have hevyn to þer mede,' The xv Tokens, 26 (Anglia, iii. p. 534); 'And lene vs so oure liue to lede | pat we mai all haue heuene to mede,' Horstmann, A. L. ii. 188/645, 6.

# APPENDIX.

## I.

The following piece, from Brit. Mus. MS. Harley, 4690 was printed in Ritson's notes to Minot.

And þen þe Engliſche men towken many off þe Skottes  
horses and priken after þe Skottes & ſlewe hem downe [f. 79 b<sup>2</sup>],  
right. And there men mighte ſee the nowbell king Edward off Englonde  
& his folke hough mannefully þei chaseden the Skottes wereoff is  
romance was made.

There men mighte well ſee	
Many a Skotte lightly flee,	
And þe Engliſche after priking	
With ſcharp ſwerdes þem ſtiking.	
And þere her baners weren ffounde	[f. 80 a <sup>1</sup> .
Alle displayedde on the grounde,	
And layne ſtarkly on blode,	
As þei hadde fought on þe flode.	
Butt þe ſcottes, ille mote þei þee,	
Fought þe Engliſch adreint ſchulde be :	10
For bi cauſe þei mighte not flee,	
Butte iff þei adreinte ſchulde bee.	
Butte þei kepte hem manly on londe,	
So þatte þe Scottes might nott stonde	
And felde hem downe to grounde,	15
Many þowsandes in þatte stounde ;	
And þe Engliſche men purſuyede hem ſo,	
Tille þe flode was alle a-goo.	
Alle þus þe ſcottes diſcomfite were,	
In litell tyme wiþ grete feere.	20
ffor no noþer wiſe dide þei ſtryve,	
Butt as .xx. ſchepe among wolſes fyve.	
ffor .v. off hem þen were	
Ayenſte an Engliſchman þere.	

4. *stiking*] *striking* R.

So þere itte was welle semyng, 25  
 Þatte wíth multitude is no scomfiting.  
 Butt wíth God fulle off mighte,  
 Wham he will helpe in trewe ffighte,  
 So was þis bi Goddes grace  
 Discomfiture off skottes in þat place; 30  
 That men cleped Halidown hille;  
 ffor þere þis bateill befelle,  
 Atte Berwike, be side þe towne.  
 This was do wíth mery sowne,  
 Wíþ pipes, trompes & nakers þer to; 35  
 And loude clariounes þei blew also.  
 And þere þe scottes leyen dede,  
 XXX. M<sup>l</sup>, be yonde Twede,  
 & v. M<sup>l</sup> tolde there to,  
 Wíth .vii. C. xii. and mo: 40  
 & of Englischemen but sevenne,  
 Worschipped be God in hevenne!  
 & þat wer men on ffoete goyng,  
 By foly of her owne doyng.  
 On seinte Margeteys eue, as y yow tell, 45  
 Befille þe victory of Halidoune hille,  
 In þe yere off God almighte,  
 A M<sup>l</sup> iii. c. and ii. and þritty, [f. 80 a<sup>2</sup>.  
 Atte þis discomfiture  
 þe Englisch knightes towke her hure, 50  
 Of þe Skottes þatte weren dede,  
 Cloþes and haberiounes for her mede;  
 And watte euer þei might finde  
 On þe Skottes, þei leste not behinde;  
 And þe knaues, by her purchas, 55  
 Hadde þere a mery solas:  
 For þei hadde, for her degree,  
 In alle her lyffe þe better to be.  
 Alle þus þe bateille towke ending;  
 But y canne not telle off þe þen golng 60

45. *Margeteys* *Margete ys* MS.48. *ii*] *iii* R.60. *þen*] *yen* R.

Off þe too kingges, were þei become,  
 & weþer þei wenten oute or home.  
 Butt Godde, þatte is heven king,  
 Sende vs pees and gode ending.

## II.

This poem is from MS. Cotton Galba E. ix., where it almost immediately precedes Minot's songs. It is a translation from a French original, of which there is a copy on the first fly leaves of MS. Harleian, Brit. Mus. 746, and another in MS. Cotton Julius A. v, ff. 177 b-179, and an abbreviated Latin version in MS. Cotton Vespasian E vii, f. 89. (See Ward's Catalogue of Romances in the British Museum, pp. 299, 309, 322.) Our poem follows the first of these closely; it was most probably written with a view to discredit Henry the Fourth. According to Otterbourne, p. 210 (ed. Hearne), he had spoken of himself, while still Henry of Lancaster, as Merlin's Boar of Commerce who would lead back the scattered flocks to the lost pastures. But the poem says he is the Mole cursed from God's mouth, in whose days terrible evils must come on England. It is a good example of the political use made of the popular belief in the 'prophecies of Merlin.' (See *Archaeologia*, xx. pp. 250-271.)

Ritson printed ll. 143-188 in his edition of Minot, pp. 96-98. A prose version, of which an extract is given in Halliwell's *Shakespeare*, ix. p. 401, is very closely related to this poem.

Here bigins prophecies of Merlin. [f. 49 a<sup>2</sup>.]  
 Herkenes speches of manikyn thinges,  
 Of gret ferlys & of mani kynges,  
 þat has bene us be forne.  
 And þe tyme sen God was borne  
 And how kynges þat efter ure day 5  
 Sal reng when þat we ar away,  
 And of þaire ayres þat er onborne,  
 And how Ingland sal be lorne:  
 Merlyn spekes al of þis,  
 And of othere thinges þat was & es, 10  
 And it sal be after vs.

4. Perhaps, *And sen þe tyme þat God was borne*; see Minot, iii. 109.  
 5. Omit *þat*. II. ii] perhaps *þat*.

A kyng Henri þe thrid begynes þus,  
 A lambe in Winchestre borne sal be,  
 A white chin haue sal he,  
 & he sal haue, als Merlyn sais, 15  
 Sothefast lepes in al his dais.  
 In his hert, forsothe, wretyn sal be,  
 Halynes, wil wit ȝe.  
 A gode hous he sal ger dight,  
 þat sal be of ful fair sight; 20  
 Bot fully made sal it noȝt be  
 In his tyme, for sothe wit ȝe,  
 We for his Ending! whils he es truande  
 A wolf sal come of vnkouthe lande, [f. 49 b<sup>1</sup>,  
 And in his kynrik sal he wone, 25  
 And ful gret harme he sal him done.  
 A ful grete were raies sal he,  
 Bot, at þe ending, þe lamb maister sal be.  
 He sal ouercome þe wulf at þe last,  
 Thurgh help of a rede fox of þe northwest. 30  
 And after þat tyme, with in a stond,  
 þe lamb with ded beis broght to grond.  
 And when he dies, for sothe wit ȝe,  
 In unkouth lande sal his sede be.  
 And sua sal þe land duel & a byde 35  
 With outen any socoure, vntil a tide.  
 And þare sal come a dragon of þe lamb sede,  
 Menged with mercy & with felhede;  
 And right als a gayt sal he haue a berde,  
 And al his famen sal for him be ferde: 40  
 And he sal gif schadow to Ingland al,  
 For cald & for hete þat he it gif sal.  
 þe ta fote in Eurwik sete sal he,  
 His other fote in London, for sothe wit ȝe:  
 Thre wonyngstedes he sal umlap þat tide; 45  
 To Wales sal he opon his mouthe wide,

14. *chin*] *thing* MS.  
 margin, *Westminster*.

31. *astond* in one word MS.

42. *gif*] perhaps *geme* is to be read.

16. *lepes*] perhaps *lippes*.

29. *wulf*] *o* is written over the *u* MS.

39. In the margin, *Edward j.*

19. In the

And sal ger quak be north & be southe,  
 For dred & for aghe þat comes of his mouthe.  
 His eyn sal strik to many contre;  
 þe ande of his mouthe ful swet sal be. 50  
 And he sal ouercom many vnkouthe cyde  
 þat weres agaynes him, & many misbyde.  
 In his tyme sal bekes rene al of blode,  
 And he sal mak walles þat sal do litel gode.  
 With his sede þas walles sal dere, 55  
 þat sal turn afterward þe land vnto were.  
 After þat tyme, sithen at þe last,  
 A folk sal come out of þe north west,  
 Thurgh a wyked grayhond led sal be;  
 And þan sal þai dye be a syde o þe se: 60  
 Mikel folk þat tyme, with outen any faile,  
 With dole sal dye at þat bataile.  
 In his tyme the sone als blode sal be rede,  
 þat sal betaken many mans dede,  
 And spiling of blode of many men bedene, 65  
 Thurgh dintes of swerds þat scharp er & kene.  
 þe folk as stepchildre sal duel & abyde  
 In many grete perels vntil a tyde.  
 þe dragon sal foster a fox þat sal be vngayne,  
 for he sal werre with him with might & mayne, 70  
 In lif of þe dragon, als Merlin saies,  
 Bot it sal not be ended in his lyf daies.  
 And al his famen ouercom sal he wele,  
 And wile þeme his land euerilkadele,  
 And an of þe best knyght halden sal he be, [f. 49 b<sup>2</sup>. 75  
 þat es in þis werld, forsothe wit þe,  
 And sithen at þe last dy sal he  
 Be side a fer marche of another contre.  
 þan sal þe land duel in were,  
 Als a stepchild withouten þe mere. 80  
 Wailoway sal þai sing þen alder mast,  
 Als a stepchild in land þat es wast.

51. *cyde*] *tyde* MS.  
*dere*.

55. Perhaps, *His sede with þas walles sal he*

61. In the margin, *ffaukirr*.

78. *a nother MS.*



After þe dragon sal come a gaite ;  
 He sal haue hornes of siluer & saite.  
 Right as a buc sal he haue a berd ; 85  
 His famen for him ful litel sal be-ferd.  
 An ande of him sal out fare,  
 Sal hunger betaken & mikel oper care,  
 And dyeng of folk & tynnyng of lande :  
 For he sal tyne mikel þat he before fand. 90  
 And Merlin, forsothe, in his boke sais  
 þat hordom sal be vsed mikel in his dais.  
 And þis ilk gaite j neuen began,  
 He sal com out of Carnarvian ;  
 And to another land wend sal he, 95  
 To sek him þe flour of lif þat sal be so fre.  
 Mikel folk of þe land, in tyme of the gate,  
 Sal dye with dole, as j wele waite,  
 Wharfor þat folk of othere contre,  
 Ful bald & ful ken agayn him sal be : 100  
 And in hys tyme briges sal be  
 Of armed folke in dik of the se.  
 Stanes sal fal ful euen in þe land,  
 þat befor in castel war wont for to stand.  
 And, in his tyme als it sal seme right 105  
 þat Ouse al offire brene sal bright.  
 A bataile alswa sal be in a feld,  
 þat es right schapen as it war a scheld.  
 Opon a narm of þe se, with outen any fail,  
 þar sal be sett þat ilk bataile : 110  
 þar mai men finde ded grete plente,  
 Als men dos fisches in þe salt se ;  
 þar sal be fallen many wight heued ;  
 Many dohti man þar sal be leued.  
 & wit 3e forsothe, with outen any fail, 115  
 It sal be called þe wikked bataile.

85. *buc*] perhaps *hawk* is to be read. 86. *beferd* in one word MS.  
 87. *And an* MS. *him*] *pam* MS. 88. *be taken* MS. *oper*] *of pare* MS.  
 89. *dyeng*] *e* written above the line. 93. *nenen* MS. 100. *him*] omit. MS.  
 104. *forte* MS. 106. *Ouse*] *hous* MS. 110. *sal* written above the line.

Of þe gaites blode sal come a bere,  
 And he sal rais agayn *him* were ;  
 And þe gait sal tyn mikil of his land,  
 & mikel of his riches þat he befor fand ; 120  
 Scham sal him think þan at þe last,  
 A pouer sal he gedre ful þern & fast ;  
 þan sal he cleth him in a lyon 'skyne,  
 [f. 50 a<sup>1</sup>.  
 And al þat he outraid & more sal he wyne.  
 A folk sal come out of þe north west, 125  
 For to help þe gait þan at þe last,  
 þat sal ger þe gait douted be  
 In his awen land & in other contre.  
 þat folk sal come to þe gait þen,  
 And þai sal venge þe gait of his fomen. 130  
 And efter all þat tyme, wele wit þe,  
 In mekill sorow and pyne end sall he.  
 And þan sall all þe land, als the stori leres,  
 Efter him be fild full of Henueres ;  
 And þai sall wirk grete trey and tene 135  
 To þe folk þat bifore þam has bene.  
 In the tyme of the gait with owten ani faile,  
 Sall ane Aren spring up out of Kornwaile :  
 All his faire fethers of gold sall be ;  
 And in Knaresmire end sall he. 140  
 For treson and falshed þat in him bese fun,  
 þe name off þat Aren es cald Gaunston.  
 Efter þe gayt sall cum a lyon,  
 þat in hert ful fers and fell sal be fun :  
 His bihalding sall be ful of pete, 145  
 His sembland to seke *reght* lykind sall be :  
 His brest als wa sall be slokening of threst,  
 Vntill all þat lufes pese and rest.  
 His tong sall speke wordes all of lewte ;  
 His bering like a lamb meke sal be. 150

117. *Bannokbourn* is written above the line. 121. *him*] *m* written  
 above the line. 126. *forto* in one word MS. 127. *for to* after  
*douted* would improve the rhythm. 140. So MS.; rather read  
*Knavesmire*. 142. should read *Gaunston*. 145. In the margin,  
*Edward iij*. 146. *reght*] *rest* MS. 148. *pat* omitted in MS.

He sall have trey and tene in biginning,  
 To chistise misdoers of wrang lifing.  
 And als thurgh felnes sepin sall he seke,  
 Till he haue made þe folk als lamb to be meke.  
 He sall be cald in þe werld, als wide als it es, 155  
 Bare of hele of nobillay and of felnes.  
 Als a lamb sall he *be* milde and meke,  
 And vnto rightwisnes ay sall he seke.  
 Þis ilk beste þat es þe bare named biforn  
 Cumes out of Windesore, þare bese he born. 160  
 Whetand his tuskes sall þat ilk bare  
 Fare thurgh foure landes þare he come neuer are:  
 And euermore his iornay euer ilkadele  
 Sall he do hardily, nobilly and wele;  
 Till þe burgh Ierusalem and to þe haly land, 165  
 Sall he find none oganis him to stand.  
 Spayne sall trembill for tene and for care;  
 Aragown sall haue drede & dout of þe bare.  
 In France sall he sett his heuid biforn.  
 His tail sal rest in Yngland whare he was born. 170  
 He sal whet his tuskes on Pariss gates; [f. 50a<sup>2</sup>.  
 Almayn sal be ful ferd for his lates.  
 He sall ger reuers & mani grete flode  
 Be rinand with hernes and with rede blode.  
 Þe greses þat er grene sal he rede make; 175  
 Mani man for þe bare sal trembill & quake.  
 In alkins landes win sall þe bare  
 þat ani of his eldres has losed are.  
 So nobil and so doghty sall þe bare be  
 þat he sal or he dy were corons thre. 180  
 Vnderlout sall he mak ilk outen land  
 To be at his will, and bow till his hand,  
 Wele more sall þe bare conquer and win  
 þan ani did bifore of all his end kin.  
 All lordes sall him lout with out ani lese, 185  
 And þan sall his land be in swith gude pese:

151. *biginnig* MS.166. *oganis*] *ogains* R.157. *be* supplied by R.184. *end*] perhaps *endur* is to be read.

Sepin in a fer land end sall he,  
 And for his nobilles be grauen bitwen kinges thre.  
 Efter him sal *cum* ane ass, wit þe ful wele,  
 He sall haue fete of lede and heuid of stele. 190  
 Of bras sall his hert be & yren his skyn;  
 He sall be harder beste þan ani of his kin.  
 In all his time, with owten ani lese,  
 Sall he lede his land in rest & in pese.  
 And in þe biginning of his kingrike, 195  
 Sall he big a cete and wall it and dike.  
 His voice and his cryng, als I understand,  
 Sall be herd swith wele in euerilka land.  
 And also þis ilk ass for his lewte,  
 Mekil part of his time praised sal be. 200  
 þan sal he gif þe lordschip of all his land  
 Vntill ane Arne and sese it in his hand:  
 þat Arne sal þeme it wel at his might,  
 Fro alkins *ennies*, bi day and by night;  
 Wele sal he þeme it vntill a tyde 205  
 þat he be ouercumen and kasten with *pride*.  
 þan sall be sorow to one and to oper,  
 When þe Arne sall be slane with swerd of his broþer.  
 Seþen vnto þe ass falles þe land,  
 And he sal þeme it wele in his awin hand. 210  
 þe land in his time wele þemid sal be,  
 And of all gudes haueand plente.  
 Sepin sal a moldwerp be þemer in land,  
 Weried with Goddes mowth mai þe warand,  
 A swith grete wretche þe moldwarp sal be; 215  
 In euerilka nede fast sal he fle.  
 His hide sall be rogh als a gait skin,  
 Ilk a stede bese þe wer þat he *cumes* in.  
 And on him sall light, who so right redes, [f. 50 b<sup>1</sup>.  
 þe vengeance of God for ald euill dedes. 220  
 He sal be ful wrangwis in euerilka wane,  
 And grace in his time gettes he nane.

195. *biginnig* MS.  
above the line MS.

204. *ennies* MS.

217. *hide*] written

In þe land sal be at his biginning,  
 Plente of mone and all oþer thing.  
 He sall be mekill praised vntill a tide, 225  
 Till he be casten down with sin & with pride:  
 þan sall cum a dragon ful fell & ful scharp,  
 And he sall raise were oganis þe moldwarp;  
 And als þe folk sall find withouten ani faille,  
 Founded on a stane bese þat bataile. 230  
 And als with þat dragon þan sall be prest  
 A wolf þat sall cum out of the west:  
 He sall bede bataill ful fell & ful scharp,  
 And rise with þe dragon oganis þe moldwarp.  
 Both þe dragon and þe wolf with mekill might 235  
 Sall raise þaire tales samyn on hight.  
 Out of Yreland þan sall cum a liown,  
 And hald with þe wolf and with þe dragoun:  
 þan sall all Ingland quakeand be,  
 Als leues þat hinges on þe espe tre. 240  
 þan sall þe moldwerp be sore adred,  
 With þam thre sal he be so straytly sted.  
 His folk sall he gader and samyn þam þen,  
 Forto þeme his land fro his famen.  
 And so ouercomen þan sall he be, 245  
 þe moldwerp with his men fast sall þai fle.  
 þan in þat ilk time þe castels all  
 þat standes on Tems bank doun sall þai fall.  
 And þe water sall seme als it war dry,  
 So many ded bodise sal þarin ly. 250  
 þe foure chefe waters þat er in Ingland  
 Sall rin all of rede blude, als I vnderstand.  
 þe grete hilles for drede clounen sall be,  
 And þe moldwerp for ferd sall oway fle.  
 þe dragon and þe wolf and þe liowne 255  
 Sall chace þe moldwerp, in feld and in toune,  
 þan sall Ingland on euerilka side,  
 Be with owten þemer vntill a tide.

223. *biginnig* MS.  
 151. *igland* MS.

229. *omit als*.  
 257. *euerilkaside* in one word MS.

241. *moldwerp* MS.

þe moldwerp at þe last bese leued noght els  
 Bot ane yle in þe se, þat he in dwells, 260  
 þe twa partes sall he gif oway of þat land,  
 Forto saue þe thrid part in his owin hand.  
 And so sall þe moldwerp lede all his life  
 In were & in wandreth and in mekill strif.  
 In tyme of þe moldwerp, be 3e full balde, 265  
 Sall þe hate bathes bigin to be calde.  
 [f. 50 b<sup>1</sup>.  
 And efter þat, euill ded dy sall he sone,  
 For þe wikked sines þat he has done,  
 Without any lesing, in flodes of þe se,  
 þurgh Vengeance of God drowned bese he. 270  
 þan sall all Ingland on wonder wise,  
 Be eyn partid in thre parties;  
 Waters and woddes, feldes and towne  
 Bytwene þe dragon and þe lyoune,  
 And so, efter þat time, named sall it be 275  
 þe land of conquest in ilk cuntre.  
 þus sall þe ayres of Ingland kinde  
 Pas out of heritage, als we here finde.

Explicit *prophetia* de Merlyn.

## III.

This poem is found in the Liber Loci Benedicti de Whalley, Brit. Museum MS. Add. 10374, a sort of commonplace book written in the 14th century. It has been printed with other extracts from the MS. in Whitaker's History of Whalley, ed. iv. vol. i. p. 155.

§ Ceste est la copie de *letre* qe Dauid le Bruys maunda [f. 110 a.  
 Philipp de Valoys Roy de ffrance.

Ore escoutez de Dauid le Bruys  
 Come a Philippe de Valoys maunda saluz.  
 Per ceo qe auoms entenduz  
 Qe moult de gentz auoms perduz,  
 Vous face a sauoir qe bien tart 5  
 Si auoms fait notre part,

271. *iglang* MS.

2. *maunda*] *maund* MS.

Taunt auoms tenuz voz maundeme tz  
 Qe nous sumes perduz & noz gentz,  
 La terre Descoce ay refuse,  
 & en Engleterre su demore, 10  
 Tout sowl saunz nul amy,  
 & en garde dantruy.  
 Jeo me confesse a toutes gentz,  
 Qe trope auoms fait malement  
 Quant nous entrams en Engleterre 15  
 En absence le Roy de leuer guerre,  
 Qare nous nauoioms riens a faire,  
 Mes grant mescheance pur nous aquere.  
 Nous entendismes bien passere  
 Parmy la terre saunz destourbere; 20  
 Meis Lerceuesqe oue poeir grant  
 Nous vynt toust encountraunt;  
 Le Percy & le Moubray  
 Se porterent bien al iournay.  
 Nous nauoyoms grace ne poeir 25  
 Encountre lour bataille estere;  
 A la nouelle croyce de Dureme  
 La perdymes nostre Realme;  
 La fumes pris en fuaunt:  
 Philippe, gardez vous de taunt. 30  
 Qe nous fumes pris en nostre trespase,  
 Dount sumes venuz de haut en bas;  
 Come la fortune est ordyne,  
 Primes mountams de gre en gre;  
 Quant estoy venus al pluys haute 35  
 Si perdy moun regne qe ore me faute.  
 Vous me maundastes par verite,  
 Qe en Engleterre ne serroit troue,  
 fiors chapellayns dames & moignes  
 & autres femmes & berchers: 40  
 Meys trouames illoeqes grant gent,  
 & ceo nous vynt en confusement:

31. *trespase*] the last letter has faded out.

36. *ore*] *ore* MS.

Dount nous auoms bien aparceu  
 Qe le Roy du ciel est toust somelu.  
 En qil soit oue son poeir 45  
 Le Roy du ciel luy voet aidere;  
*Pur* ceo sumes de sa partie.  
 Escoutez, Philippe, qe ieo en die  
 Tout soit il *notre* frere en ley,  
 Moult auoms trespasse vers luy: 50  
 Et tu, Philippe, en grant outrage  
 Retenez son heritage.  
 Estoit a grant sire anaunt: [f. 110 b.  
 Heritage est descendaunt,  
 Qe nul homme ne poet iuger, 55  
 Qe heritage doit remountere,  
 Meis descendre de gre en gre;  
 Cest est ley *par* verite  
 Moun pierre Robert quant il vesquist  
 Roy Descoce a tort luy fist; 60  
 Et nous regnames apres sa mort,  
 Si auoms troue *notre* tort.  
 Qi en fausyne se regna,  
 Le tierce gre ne auera ja;  
 Nous auoms regne a taunt en cea; 65  
 Regne ore qi qe *purra*.  
 Meis ore, Philippe, auysez vous:  
 Si prenez ensaumple de nous,  
 Sicome auoms fait & les noz,  
 Si ferreiez vous & les voz. 70  
 Vous me maundastes *votre* messagere,  
 Qe a Loundres dussoms encountere;  
 Voz gentz sount venuz deuaunt,  
 Philippe, ore vous aiourne taunt.  
*Votre* Seneschal fait *purueance*, 75  
 Meis vous demorez trope en fraunce:  
 Par ceo, Philippe, hastez a nous,  
 Qi la sumes trouez trestoutz.



## IV.

This poem is from MS. Harley, 4843, a large folio of the XVth century containing collections which mostly relate to Durham. It has only been printed in Hutchinson's History of Durham, vol. ii. p. 342. The glosses printed at the foot of the page are written between the lines.

Anno domini millesimo CCC xl. vi. die martis in vigilia  
Luce euangeliste hora *matutina* ix<sup>a</sup> commissum fuit bellum [f. 241 a.  
inter Anglos & Scottos non longe a Dunelmia in loco vbi nunc stat  
crux vulgariter dicta Newillcrosse.

## · Incipit prologus ·

O miranda bonitas Ihesu saluatoris,  
Humiles qui respicit omnibus in horis,  
Superbos humilians cuspidē meroris,  
Quos ceca cupiditas tenuit erroris.

Non est sapiencia certe contra deum,  
Vlla nec prudencia valet contra eum;  
Nunc vni nunc alteri dat deus tropheum,  
Judas<sup>1</sup> set preualuit nunc in Amorreum<sup>2</sup>.

5

Benedictus deus qui nos visitauit,  
Ab Egipti carcere<sup>3</sup> qui nos liberauit,  
Qui sub nostris pedibus<sup>4</sup> Pharaonem strauit,  
filios qui Israel diu captiuauit.

10

Explicit prologus. Incipit tractatus belli.

In Francorum partibus rege debellante,  
Et sibi subicere Caleis laborante,  
Sathane satellites<sup>5</sup>, treuga non obstante,  
Irruunt in Angliam, vt solebant ante.

15

Rex Dauit indomitus, vana spe seductus,  
Et Francorum litteris falsis circumductus,  
Ad Ledel se properat, ad suorum luctus,  
Nam patet per exitum qualis fuit fructus.

20

<sup>1</sup> gens anglorum.<sup>2</sup> gentem scoticam.<sup>3</sup> scottica tyrannide.<sup>4</sup> angli.<sup>5</sup> scotti.

*ffructus parvus affuit, licet capiebat  
Vnum forcinuculum sibi quod nocebat,  
Proth dolor! set militem<sup>1</sup> viuum quem videbat,  
Post visum interimit, licet non decebat.*

*Non decet ad principes nec ad reges magnos* 25  
*Ad vindictam pessimam nimis esse pronos.*  
*Qui studet destruere fideles colonos,*  
*Vix sedebit filius eius super thronos.*

*Capto forcinuculo, Dauit<sup>2</sup> est letatus*  
*Plus quam credi poterit, & est exaltatus,* 30  
*Sic, sic per Achitofel<sup>3</sup> est consiliatus,*  
*Partesque destruere vult episcopatus<sup>4</sup>.*

*Temptauit multociens Duglas<sup>5</sup> suo more,* [f. 241 b.  
*Vt ab hoc proposito, & ab hoc errore*  
*Dauit regem verteret, suo pro honore,* 35  
*Error sed nouissimus peior est priore.*

*Captis, raptis omnibus ad Lidel inuentis,*  
*Versus austrum properant in furore mentis,*  
*Non erant sed memores prophete dicentis,*  
*Salua locum domini & ipsius gentis.* 40

*Occidebant homines vtpote bidentes,*  
*Non misericordiam in se plus habentes,*  
*Heu! Cuthberti presulis sic tractabant gentes*  
*Horum sunt plures inopes, erant qui potentes.*

*Spoliant ecclesias, rapiunt iumenta,* 45  
*Et de quibus sumpserant nummos & talenta,*  
*Comburunt & grangias, simul & frumenta,*  
*Parum parcunt talibus falsa fide tenta.*

*Vox in Rama<sup>6</sup> sonuit fletus et ploratus,*  
*Quum vir cum gregibus fugit desolatus,* 50  
*Panem petit paruulus, nec est sibi datus,*  
*Ex hinc lamentabiles dabat eiulatus.*

41. *ut pote* MS.

<sup>1</sup> es de selbe.  
<sup>4</sup> dunelmie.

<sup>2</sup> bruys.  
<sup>5</sup> willelmus.

<sup>3</sup> malcolmun flenyng (*sic*).  
<sup>6</sup> northumbria.

Tunc fugit plebs vlulans partes ad australes,  
 Non succursus hominum sperans aliquales,  
 Set inter angustias voces promunt tales, 55  
 Cuthberte, nos adiuua, si quo modo vales.

Cuthbertus, non immemor tante feritatis,  
 Et vim *grandem* sustinens sue libertatis,  
 Sic precatur dominum nostris pro peccatis  
 Horum sors & victoria cessit desperatis. 60

Ad Dunelmum properant Scotti maledicti,  
 Deridentes Anglicos ac si essent victi,  
 Ad nemus de Beureparke festinant predicti,  
 Vbi erant postea fortiter afflicti.

figentes tentoria leti comederunt, 65  
 Nam dispersos Anglicos nuncii<sup>1</sup> dixerunt;  
 Scottis nescientibus prompti set fuerunt,  
 Aput Aukland Anglici mane vt viderunt.

Noctis sub silencio quando rex<sup>2</sup> dormiuit,  
 Duglas cum complicitibus ad predandum iuit, 70  
 Misit suos catulos<sup>3</sup> huc illuc, vt sciuit,  
 Set ruinam maximam venturam nesciuit. [f. 242 a.]

Luce<sup>4</sup> in vigilia, fere in aurora,  
 Venerunt ad Merington non in bona hora,  
 Depredantur patriam voce cum sonora, 75  
 Set in luctum vertitur risus sine mora.

Ipsis depredantibus, ecce summo mane  
 Quedam pars<sup>5</sup> exercitus gentis Anglicane  
 In predones irruit, & fugerunt plane  
 Omnes, velut lepores persequente cane. 80

Sicut canes lepores insequi solebant,  
 Sic nostrates<sup>6</sup> Scoticos vbique cingebant,  
 In agris & semitis mortui cadebant,  
 Quia sparsis cerebris stare non valebant.

62. *anglios* MS.

<sup>1</sup> monachi trans missi.  
*geliste.*

<sup>2</sup> *edwardus.*  
<sup>5</sup> *bertram coupland.*

<sup>3</sup> *predones.*  
<sup>6</sup> *anglici.*

<sup>4</sup> *euan-*

Agmina prospiciens *Duglas Anglicorum* 85  
 Et *progressum* indicans *sagittariorum*,  
*Non* stetit *ulterius* ad *tenendum* *forum*,  
 Set iuit *celeriter* ad *relictum* *chorum*<sup>1</sup>.

Cum venisset *igitur* *Duglas* *infra* *nemus*,  
 Dixit; *fratres*, *surgite*, *noua* *nos habemus*, 90  
 Ad *arma* *concurrere* & *post* *ordinemus*,  
 Si *pro nostro* *commodo* sit vt *nos* *pugnemus*.

Tribus in *agminibus* venit *gens* *Anglorum*,  
 Et in *prima* *acie* est *gens* *Northumbrorum*.  
*Sunt* *viginti* *milia* *certe* *pugnatorum*, 95  
 Et *Percy* *quem* *nouimus* *ductor* est *eorum*.

Si *fas* *esset* *vincere* *ipsius* *vexillum*  
 Et *Neuell* *similiter* *qui* *stat* *iuxta* *illum*,  
*Caperemus* *Anglicos* *tempus* *post* *pusillum*,  
 Et *Archiepiscopus*<sup>2</sup> *veluti* *pupillum*. 100

Tunc dixit, vt *dicitur*, *Dauid* *ad* *maiores*;  
*Non* *sunt* *nunc* *in* *Anglia* *viri* *bellatores*,  
*Non* *sunt* *nisi* *clerici*, *aque* *portitores*,  
*fient* *ergo* *martires* *isti* *confessores*.

*Non* *est* *nisi* *palea* *hec* *plebs* *congregata*, 105  
*Seges* *est* *in* *Francia* *valde* *fatigata*,  
*Capiemus* *Anglicos* *si* *permittant* *fata*,  
*Velut* *auceps* *volucrem* *cum* *sit* *inuiscata*.

*Philippus*, *rex* *Francie*, *noster* *specialis*, [f. 242 b.  
*Nobis* *scripsit* *litteram*, & *est* *tenor* *talis*; 110  
*Non* *est* *nunc* *in* *Anglia* *sexus* *aliqualis*  
*Caput* *qui* *defendere* *potest* *suum* *malis*.

*Wilham*<sup>3</sup> *illa* *agmina* *que* *sic* *indicasti*,  
*Ex* *defectu* *cerebri* *forte* *machinasti*,  
*Extra* *cursum* *solitum* *quia* *vigilasti* 115  
*Tu* *ex* *vno* *homine* *duos* *estimasti*.

116. *estimasti* is written as a correction above *machinasti*.

<sup>1</sup> *exercitum* *scottorum*.

<sup>2</sup> *W. de Souch*.

<sup>3</sup> *duglas*.

Si tu sis *perteritus*, vade vias tuas,  
 Et fuge *velociter* ne *percussus* ruas,  
 Donec habuerimus *manus nostras* duas,  
 Non *timemus* Anglicos nec cantelas suas. 120

Ad hec *verba motus est* Duglas *vehementer*,  
 Et *circumstantibus* dixit *luculenter*,  
 Hodie non *fugiam*, stabo *set* *potenter*,  
 Et hoc luet plurimus *incrassatus* venter.

Non *Anglorum, domine*, curo de cantelis, 125  
 Regnoque Scocie ero vir *fidelis*,  
 Quod si non credideris & *probare* velis,  
 Hoc probetur hodie *factis non loquelis*.

Tunc ad arma bellica Scotti *concurrerunt*,  
 Clipeis ab aureis montes *splenduerunt*, 130  
 Juxta regis latera fortes *confluxerunt*,  
 Et *pre* magno gaudio tripudianerunt.

Venit eo tempore missus a priore,  
 Vnus simplex monachus tractans de amore,  
 Quem iussit interimi David in furore, 135  
 Set non ita *factum* est vt *precepit* ore.

Exeunt<sup>1</sup> de nemore insimul globati,  
 Gladiis & fustibus fortiter stuffati,  
 Licet erant omnibus bene preparati,  
 Erant nichilominus excommunicati, 140

Scotis audientibus turmas segregatim,  
 En! nostrates veniunt valde seriatim,  
 Cum tubis clangentibus accedunt paulatim,  
 Ad ictus, ad verbera conuenerunt statim.

Currunt Scottis obuiam mox architenentes, 145  
 Et transmittunt angelos<sup>2</sup> ipsos persequentes, [f. 243 a.  
 Sic purgati fuerant scotticorum dentes,  
 Quod sunt qui relictis sunt adhuc conquerentes.

<sup>1</sup> scotti. 145. *architenetes* MS.

<sup>2</sup> sagittas.

Irruerunt insimul Anglici & Scotti,  
 Vt leones rabidi circa predam moti,  
 Set quod non dixerant culpas sacerdoti,  
 Per ictus & verbera erant culpis loti. 150

Quia suspicabilis Duglas fuit Dauid,<sup>1</sup>  
 Ad iuncturam igitur primam festinauit.  
 Quem in ictu oculi Bertram trucidauit,  
 Viuus tum captus est, licet non putauit. 155

Nescio quali ductus sit Dauid<sup>2</sup> fantasia,  
 Recte cum Angligenis iunxit alta via,  
 Benedictis domini matre et Maria,  
 Non vt ipse dixerat stetit propheta. 160

Prophetauit inscius vtpote volebat,  
 Set non ita accidit sicuti dicebat,  
 Laudes cum victoria sibi ascribebat,  
 Set stetit oppositum antequam sciebat.

Stetit Percy<sup>3</sup> dimicans fortiter cum Scottis, 165  
 Cum magnates plurimi starent a remotis,  
 Quod Angus<sup>4</sup> percipiens viribus cum totis  
 Ad Percy se properat cum ducentis notis.

Non auertunt facies comes nec Henricus,  
 Donec victus fuerat omnis inimicus<sup>5</sup>, 170  
 Vix in campo steterat diues vel mendicus,  
 Per quem tantus periit sanguis impudicus,

Tunc Archiepiscopus de Suche qui est dictus,  
 Ad creandos ordines<sup>6</sup> venit valde strictus,  
 Quotquot ordinauerat senciebant ictus, 175  
 Ex hinc imperpetuum fiat benedictus.

fuit nam diaconus<sup>7</sup> Mowbray vir vrbaneus,  
 Atque subdiaconus Okyll<sup>8</sup> ille canus,  
 Qui ad istos ordines fuit tam prophanus<sup>9</sup>  
 Quod non potest fieri post hec capellanus. 180

159. *b̄ndictō* MS.168. *proparat* MS.

<sup>1</sup> rex.      <sup>2</sup> rex.      <sup>3</sup> henricus.      <sup>4</sup> comes.      <sup>5</sup> scoticanus.  
<sup>6</sup> dandos ictus.      <sup>7</sup> episcopi.      <sup>8</sup> robertus.      <sup>9</sup> in occidendo.

*Illi namque clerici dicti confessores,  
Quos Danit vocauerat aque portitores<sup>1</sup>,  
Absoluunt<sup>2</sup> in fustibus suos derisores,  
Sicque iacent mortui velut peccatores.*

*Morique de Morauia vir inordinatus, [f. 243 b. 185  
Contra ius ecclesie comes nuncupatus,  
Quia duxit coniugem non licenciatus,  
Nunc ad istos ordines fuit degradatus.*

*Thomas<sup>3</sup> cancellarius ductor regis Danit,  
Qui pomposas litteras sepius dictauit, 190  
Quia terras Anglie nimis adoptauit,  
Ipsam nunc exigua terra saturauit.*

*Comes de Morauia Anglicis ingratus,  
A nostris magnatibus nimis honoratus,  
Quia venit contra nos cum David armatus, 195  
Jacet inter mortuos dire vulneratus.*

*Senescallus Scocie videns ordinatos,  
Super terram mortuos iacere prostratos,  
Ordinari noluit inter memoratos,  
Iter set arripuit inter effugatos. 200*

*Gens nostra viriliter stetit Anglicana,  
Set fugit celeriter turba Scoticana,  
Currebant per aspera insimul & plana,  
Sperantes euadere, set spes fuit vana.*

*Scotis fugientibus ipsos sunt secuti, 205  
Equites & pedites per paludes luti,  
Multi vero capti sunt, multi sunt minuti,  
Pauci set ad propria peruenerunt tuti.*

*Videns rex<sup>4</sup> attonitus quod fugissent sui,  
Volebat se reddere set nesciuit cui, 210  
Volens vexillarius<sup>5</sup> eius vita frui.  
Dixit Coupland<sup>6</sup>, cape hunc, eius<sup>7</sup> seruus<sup>8</sup> fui.*

<sup>1</sup> inabiles ad preliandum.    <sup>2</sup> occidunt.    <sup>3</sup> charters.    <sup>4</sup> david.  
<sup>5</sup> thomas carre.    <sup>6</sup> iohanni.    <sup>7</sup> s.    <sup>8</sup> a.

Mox in Dauit guttere Coupland misit manus,  
 Set in *quantum* potuit restitit *prophanus*,  
 Velit, nolit, *captus est*, set vt vir *vrbanus* 215  
*flecit secum armiger*<sup>1</sup> *volens quod sit sanus*.

Set *non* ita *sanus* est, *quin* *architenentes*  
*Cum* *sagittis ferreis* *visitabant dentes*,  
*Est vnum prouerbum dictum inter gentes*,  
*Deridentur sepius qui sunt deridentes*. 220

*Non erant nunc ordines nisi speciales*,  
*Qui non sunt mortui omnes capitales*,  
*Cumque congregauerat suos consodales*  
*Senescallus Scocie erunt generales*, [f. 244 a.]

Wath qui *sanctuarium* *Cuthberti* destruxit, 225  
*fidelem* qui *militem* *occidens* seduxit,  
 Qui *leonum* *catulos* *super nos* induxit,  
 Et *comburens segetes* risit & *non* luxit.

Wath qui *terras* diuidit *quas non adquisiuit*,  
*Alienas detinens pluresque* *concupiuit*, 230  
 Qui *vixisse* potuit *pace set non sciuit*,  
*ffoucas confodiens* in *quas dissiliuit*.

Wath qui *regis Anglie* *filiam* despexit,  
 Propter *Vnam pellicem* *quam sors sursum* vexit,  
*Lyam lippam* *oculis rex*<sup>2</sup> *Dauid dilexit*, 235  
 Set *Rachel*<sup>3</sup> *pulcherrimam* *vix gaudens respexit*.

*Non laudetur aliquis propter istud factum*,  
*Nam fuit miraculum quicquid erat actum*,  
*Laudetur set Dominus* qui *custodit pactum*,  
 Et *Cuthberti presulis* *vendicat ius fractum*. 240

*Landes deceptorias cunctas respuamus*,  
*Et ad thronum gracie preces effundamus*,  
*Vt per temporalia sic, sic transeamus*,  
*Semper eternalia ne nos amittamus*.

Amen.

<sup>1</sup> coupland.

<sup>2</sup> scocie.

<sup>3</sup> reginam scocie.



## NOTES ON APPENDIX.

### I.

#### Halidon Hill.

1-7. This passage is rendered in Caxton's Chronicle, ed. 1502, 'And there men myght see many a Scottysshman caste downe vnto y<sup>e</sup> grounde | & the baners dysplayed hackyd into peces | & many a gode haberyoyne of stele in y<sup>e</sup> blode bath.'

9-13. The position taken up by the English is described in a speech attributed to Douglas by the writer of the Gesta Edwardi Terti, 'Nunc alia fortuna tanquam inclusos illos in nostris finibus huc adduxit, hinc, siquidem a tergo villam optimam viris bellicosis munitam; a dextris vero pelagum spatiosum et altum, a sinistris autem alveum fluminis de Twede cujus intumescens mare riparum marginem jam implevit,' p. 115.

41. 'In tanta siquidem caede nisi miles unus et armiger unus de exercitu Anglicano, et pauci pedites ceciderunt,' id. p. 116.

61. Whither they betook themselves, i.e. Edward the Third and Edward Balliol.

### II.

#### The Prophecies of Merlin.

13. The Harleian MS. (afterwards quoted as H.) has, '[U]n aignel vendra hors Wincestre q<sup>i</sup> a vera blaunche launge & levers veritables,' but the Latin version gives 'lanam habens albam,' which is explained in the margin by 'laneam habens barbam.' This perhaps points to *chin* in the sense of *beard* as the true reading. According to Trivet, Annales, p. 280, Henry was generally identified with Merlin's lynx.

19. A gode hous, 'une mesone de Dieu,' H., which properly means a hospital. Westminster Abbey is meant, 'The newe work of Westminster the king bigan tho anon | After is crouninge, & leide the uerste ston,' Robert of Gloucester, ii. p. 517. Comp. also 'Eodem quoque anno (1245) dominus rex devotione ductus quam habuit ad gloriosum Dei regem et confessorem Edwardum, ecclesiam Sancti Petri Westmonasterii jussit veterem dirui in parte orientali cum ipsa turri et ipsam decen-  
tius sumptibus fecit propriis reparari.' M. Paris, Hist. Angl., ii. p. 506, and Stanley, Memorials of Westminster Abbey, pp. 122-6.

23. *truande*, trusting, unsuspecting of danger. The *wolf* is Simon de Montfort; the *rede fox*, Gilbert of Clare, Earl of Gloucester and Hertford, surnamed the Red, from his red hair, Atkyns's Gloucestershire (ed. 1712), p. 716.

34. Edward was crusading when his father died.

37. *dragon*. Edward the First was generally identified with Merlin's 'warlike boar coming out of Conan.'

45. Comp. 'He sais, Merlyn, in his deuyn, of him has said, | þat þre regions, in his bandons, salle be laid,' Langtoft, ii. p. 282.

50, 1. 'Sa aleine *serra* si douce qe venkera meint *destrange terre*,' H.

54. Perhaps Berwick is meant. See Wright, Pol. Songs, p. 286, and Rishanger, Chronica, pp. 157, 375; and comp. 'Now dos Edward dike Berwik brode & long, | Als þei bad him pike, & scorned him in þer song. | Pikit him, & dikit him, on scorne said he, | He pikes & dikes in length, as him likes, how best it may be,' Langtoft, ii. pp. 272, 3. The emendation of l. 55 given in the footnote is supported by the Latin version, 'Construet muros quod gravabit semen ejus,' and by the MS. Cotton Julius, ' & fra mures q' enoient a son semail.'

59. The *grayhond* is Wallace; the *bataille* of l. 62 is Falkirk; and the *fox* of l. 69 is Bruce.

77, 8. 'Toward Scotlond to hie, at Burgh bi sandez he lay, | His tyme was no more sette here to regne in landes, | He died at a hamelette, men calle it Burgh bisandes,' Langtoft, ii. p. 340.

80-82. In MS. Cott. Julius this passage is, 'Si demurra la *terre* mult orphanycie sauntz bon governoure . . . Allas si *serra* un chauce com *munne* com de gentz orphanycies q' *reviendrunt en terre* de gaste.'

85. *buo*. 'barbe com hostour,' H., 'barbam ut austurcum,' MS. Cott. Vesp. The peregrine falcon has thick tufts of feathers below the eyes.

87, 88. These lines are corrupt. H. has '& istera de ces narilz une broume qe signefiera doel & *grant* damage, famine & mortalite des gent & *perte* de terre.' There is nothing in any of the versions answering to l. 86; the scribe may have adapted it from l. 40, which he had under his eyes in the left hand column almost opposite.

91. This *boke* is the Vaticinium Merlini.

96. 'Si quera flour de vie,' H., so in the other French version. But *lif* might also be read *lis*.

102. That is, the sea will be bridged over by the corpses of dead men.

106. 'En son temps *serra* ouse esclerari & parira qele arde,' H.; 'tempore suo fluvius oste (Ouse) clarescet & parebit quod ardeat,' MS. Cott. Vesp.

111, 12. 'Aliud etiam infortunium accidit Anglicis, quia, cum paulo

ante transissent unam foveam magnam, in quam intrat fluxus maris, nomine Bannokeburne, et jam confusi vellent redire, multi nobiles et alii prae pressura cum equis in illam ceciderunt . . . et ideo Bannokeburne in ore Anglicorum erat per multos annos sequentes.' *Chronicon de Lanercost*, p. 226.

113. *wight* should be *white*; the *wikked* of l. 116 is also a mis-translation. Comp. 'E a cel bataille morrount mout des blanche testes, si *serra* apelle la *blauanche* bataille,' H.; 'et in bello illo morientur *quamplures* alborum capitum propter quod nuncupabitur album bellum,' Vesp.

117. The *bere* is Thomas of Lancaster, and the *folk* of l. 125 are Sir Andrew Harcla, Sir Simon Ward, and their forces.

134. *Henueres*, a substitution for the 'aliens' of the other versions. The reference is here to an incident which would be well remembered in Lincolnshire. In his first Scotch expedition Edward had the help of John of Hainaut and many of his countrymen. At York, their servants fell out with some English archers over a game of dice. In the fight several of the former were killed. Their masters in turn killed three hundred and sixteen of the English archers, all men of the Bishop of Lincoln. Le Bel took part in the affair (i. pp. 39-44). Perhaps the translator of this piece was a Lincolnshire man; the Harleian MS. containing the French version appears to have belonged to Hugh Obthorp of Baston, co. Lincoln, in the fourteenth century, and subsequently to John Warner, chaplain of Sutton in the same county. (Ward, p. 309.)

138, 9. The *Aren* is Gaveston. He bore vert, six eagles displayed or. (Doyle, *Official Baronage*, i. p. 438.) He was created Earl of Cornwall in 1307.

140. *Knaresmire*, for Knavesmire, a common pasturage outside York, which was close to the York Tyburn, and came in time to be the name for the place of execution there. (Davies, *Walks through York*, p. 101; Drake, *Eboracum*, p. 398.) It is here used simply for a place of execution. Gaveston was beheaded on Blacklow Hill, June 19th, 1312.

143. *lyon*, throughout the passage he is a boar. The 'lyon' is due to the French, 'Après cel chevre vendra un sengler qe avera la teste sen & quoe de leon.' H.

146. 'Son visage *serra* repos as malades.' H.

152. *To chistise*, in punishing. The *misdoers* are Mortimer and his friends.

163. *iornay*, 'ceo qil avera a faire.' H.

189. *ass*, the 'asinus nequitiae' of the Vaticanum.

192. Perhaps *harder* is a play on his name; comp. 'Et per Richard, *riche hard* congrue notatur,' Wright, *Pol. Songs*, p. 49.

196. 'Si foundra une Cite qi *serra crie* par tot le mound, Julius. The other copies seem imperfect; the reference is obscure, perhaps the occupation of Cherbourg by the English is meant (Froissart, ix. p. 70).

202. The *Arne* is Gloucester: in contemporary poems he is generally a Swan, no doubt from his badge the swan azure. His brother of l. 208 is John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, who is not generally credited with any share in his murder. But by virtue of his office as Seneschal of England he would pronounce sentence against Gloucester (Parl. Rolls, iii. p. 378) who was murdered at Calais in 1397.

213. The *moldwerp* is Henry the Fourth, the dragon of l. 231, Percy, and the wolf of the west Glyndwr. It may, however, be mentioned that the latter, identifying himself with the dragon of Merlin's prophecy, displayed a banner with a golden dragon on a white ground. (Wylie, Henry the Fourth, i. p. 247.)

230. 'Cele guerre *serra funde* sur un pierre,' H., which is as enigmatic as the English.

237. The *liown* is perhaps Macmurrugh. But the line is more probably a vague reference to help expected from Ireland by the conspirators. In 1401, Glyndwr had sent letters to the Irish chiefs asking help. Merlin, he said, had foretold that the Irish would join the Welsh and the Scotch against Henry the Fourth. (Wylie, Henry the Fourth, i. p. 249.)

249. the *water*, 'Saverne,' H., i. e. the Severn. In the Vaticinium it is said that the Thames would be turned into blood in the time of the ass of wickedness; so also the portent of l. 266.

260. *yle*, 'nef,' H., J. Perhaps the writer was here thinking of the story that Richard the Second had escaped to the Out Isles (Wyntoun, ix. 2015-54).

278. The ending of H. is the same as this; the other copy adds 'si Dieu ne meite amendement de sa *grace*.'

### III.

#### Letre Danyd le Bruys.

This poem is clearly of English origin; it has the characteristic English mistakes. The writer of the Whalley MS. was certainly not the author of it; he has written it continuously like prose, and the rhymes have suffered in ll. 9-10, 39-40. The flourish which indicates a final *e* in *trope*, l. 14, *riene*, l. 17, *passere*, l. 19, *destourbere*, l. 20, *estere*, l. 26, *aidere*, l. 46, *remountere*, l. 56, *messagere*, l. 71, *encountreze*, l. 72, makes impossible forms of these words. There are other indications that the scribe did not fully understand what he was copying. The spelling Bruys = (Bruz) in l. 1 is noteworthy.

4. *auoms*. Read *aux*, the reference being to the French losses at Crécy.

9. refuse if right must mean, cast away (L. *recusare*).

10. *su* for *sui* (L. *sum*).

21. *Leroeuesque*, see IX. 29 note.

23. Percy, 'alter Judas Machabaeus filius Matathiae, bonus praeliator,' and Mowbray are specially mentioned in the Lanercost Chronicle, pp. 350, 351.

27. *nouelle croyee*, perhaps a folk etymology for *Neuille Cross*.

40. *Chanoignes* for *berchers* would restore the rhyme.

63. *fausyne*, deceit (L. *falsus*).

#### IV.

##### Tractatus Belli apud Crucem.

The account in the Lanercost Chronicle shows a remarkable resemblance to this poem. The Chronicle was probably written by the Minorites at Carlisle.

19. See p. 83. The Peel of Liddell was situated on the border about two miles north from Netherby.

22. *forcinuculum* is not in Ducange. *Fortalitium* is the word in the Lanercost Chronicle.

31. *Achitofel* was, as the interlineation explains, Malcolm Flemyng, created Earl of Wigton in 1342. He was a devoted adherent of David the Second. See for an account of him Rot. Scacc. Scot. i. pp. clviii. and clxvii.

33. Comp. 'Than consalyd Willame off Dowglas, | That off weris mast wys than was, | To turne agayne in thaire cuntre : | He sayd, that wyth thair honeste | Thai mycht agayne repayre rycht welle, | Syne thai off fors hade tane that Pelle. | Bot othir lordis that war by, | Sayd he had fyllid fullyly | His baggis, and thairris all twme war.' Wyntoun, viii. 6149-57.

47. *grangias*, farm houses, properly barns for storing grain.

49. This line is identical with one in a poem on the Scottish Wars of Edw. I. in Wright, Pol. Songs, p. 165. Comp. 'Sic illud tunc authenticum exstitit impletum, "Vox in Rama audita est, et noluit consolari."' Chronicon de Lanercost, p. 347.

61. The rhymes in 149-150, 165-166 show that *Scoti* not *Scotti* is the true form.

68. Bishop Auckland lies about ten miles south-west of Durham, and Kirk Merrington (l. 74) is three miles east of Bishop Auckland.

69. *rex*, Edward Baliol. It is doubtful whether he was present.

101. The true form is *Davit*; see ll. 153-154, 189-190.

134. Comp. 'Duo Nigri monachi venerunt de Dunelmia ad tractandum cum David pro treugis habendis, "Ecce," inquit David, "isti falsi monachi per suas insidias mecum colloquentes; hac enim de causa tenebant in conclavi, ut taliter defraudatos irrueret subito super nos exercitus Anglicanus." Praecepit ergo eos capi et statim decapitari, sed omnes Scoti tunc temporis sic erant occupati quod monachi clam fugientes laeti et illaesi, sine aliquo damno ad propria repedabant.' *Chronicon de Lanercost*, p. 349.

155. Sir Robert Bertram of Bothal in Northumberland, was sheriff of that county in 1343, 4. He captured both Douglas and Fleming in the battle, but being ordered by special writ to convey the latter to the Tower he let him escape. The King thereupon issued an order to seize Bertram and his goods. He was, however, pardoned in the following year. He died in 1363. See Hodgson's *Northumberland*, Pt. ii., vol. ii. p. 126.

167. Gilbert de Umfreville, third Earl of Angus, had already done good service on the English side in the Scottish wars. He was one of the leaders of the first division at Neville's Cross. He died in 1381. Hodgson's *Northumberland*, Pt. ii., vol. i. p. 34-43.

175. This jest is also worked out in the *Lanercost Chronicle*. Leland copied 'ex tabula pencilibus Dunelmensis' (pensili Dunelmensi) the following, 'Gul. de la Zuche *archiepiscopus* Ebor. & Mowbray *ejus diaconus* ac Robertus Ogle *ejus subdiaconus fortiter pugnabant*,' *Itinerary*, viii. p. 40.

178. Sir Robert de Ogle of Castle Ogle on the Blyth, to which place the captive King was brought. Hodgson, Pt. ii., vol. i. p. 381.

185. John Randolph, third Earl of Moray, younger son of Randolph the Regent. Douglas, *Peerage of Scotland*, p. 499.

189. Sir Thomas of Charteris (de Carnoto) was created Chancellor on David's return from France. There is an account of him in *Rot. Scacc. Scot.* i. p. lxxv. note.

197. Robert Stewart succeeded David Bruce as Robert the Second in 1371.

211. Leland in the place quoted above noted down, 'Thomas Carre *vexillarius dixit Joanni Copland, cape Davidem regem*.' For Coupland, see p. 86. In another poem on the battle he is described 'A re nomen habens, cui cognomen cape terram.' Wright, *Pol. Poems*, i. 46.

212. As the interlineation indicates, this should read, *seruus eius fui*.

225. Wath, woe be to.

233. This cause of dissension between the two kings is not dwelt on elsewhere.

# GLOSSARY.

This Glossary is also a fairly complete index for all words in Minot's poems except those of very common occurrence. The abbreviations (following Professor Skeat's ed. of the Tale of Gamelyn) are: *v.* infinitive mood of verb; *pr. s.*, *pt. s.*, *pr. pl.*, *pt. pl.*, third person singular or plural, present or past indicative; *imp. s.*, *imp. pl.*, second person singular or plural imperative. The other persons are indicated by numbers prefixed. A noun in the singular is indicated by *s*, in the plural by *pl.* No indication or meaning follows a word which is merely a variant form of the word preceding.

The other contractions are the usual ones. Forms marked with an asterisk are theoretical.

## A.

**Abate**, *v.* beat down, lessen, lower, viii. 19. **abated**, *pt. s.* vii. 44; *pp.* iv. 64, v. 51. O. F. *abatre*. L. *ab*, \**battuere*. -  
**Abide**, *imp. s.* remain, ii. 22. **abyde**, *v.* stop, vii. 42. **habide**, await, i. 23, vii. 106, viii. 31; hold the field, xi. 35. **habyde**, xi. 34.  
**Adreinte**, *pp.* drowned, A i. 12. M. E. *adrenchen*. A. S. *adrencan*.  
**Affiance**, *s.* trust, vii. 162. O. F. *affiance*. L. L. *adfidencia*.  
**Aghe**, *s.* dread, that which produces fear, A ii. 48. A. S. *ege*. Goth. *agis*.  
**A-goo**, *pp.* past by, A i. 18. A. S. *ágán*.  
**Ailed**, *pp.* afflicted, pained, ix. 27. A. S. *eglan*, to give pain.  
**Aire**, *s.* heir, iv. 28.  
**Alblast**, *s.* a cross-bow from which quarrels were shot. iv. 82. O. F. *arbalet*. L. *arcubalista*.  
**Ald**, *pl.* old people, iii. 19.  
**Alder**, *gen. pl. adj.* of all, A ii. 81. A. S. *calra*, *gen. pl.* of *eall*.

**All**, *adv.* altogether, x. 30. **All-if**, *conj.* even though, i. 85.  
**Allane**, *adj.* alone, ix. 65.  
**Als**, *conj.* as, i. 5, &c.; *adv.* also, i. 51, &c. **alls**, also, i. 60. also, iii. 51.  
**Alway**, *adv.* ever, vii. 62.  
**Alweldand**, *adj.* all-ruling, vii. 26.  
**Ande**, *s.* breath, A ii. 50, 87. Icel. *andi*, breath. A. S. *anda*, hate.  
**Ane**, one, iii. 94.  
**Ankers**, *pl.* anchors, x. 14. L. *ancora*.  
**Are**, *adv.* formerly, before, vii. 128, ix. 58, A ii. 178. A. S. *ær*.  
**Are**, *s.* mercy, possibly the right explanation in viii. 62. A. S. *ær*.  
**Aren**, *s.* eagle, A ii. 138. **arne**, A ii. 202. A. S. *earn*. Icel. *örn*.  
**Armure**, *s.* armour, mail, vii. 155. O. F. *armeüre*. L. *armatura*. The termination is the same as in *vesteüre*, from *vestitura*.  
**Arne**, see **Aren**.  
**Ascry**, *s.* report of scouts who have discovered the enemy, iv. 40. A different word from *ascry*, the shout of onset. See

- Skelton, ii. 152. O. F. *escrier*. Anglo-F. \**ascrier*, from L. *exquirere*.
- Assoyl**, *v.* absolve, grant pardon, ix. 30; 3. *imp. s.* iii. 115, vii. 33. *assoyl*, *v.* 88. O. F. *asoldre*. L. *absolvere*.
- At**, *prep.* to, with gerundial infinitive, i. 21, v. 58, ix. 17. *at*, on, vi. 22.
- Availe**, *v.* profit, help, iii. 46.
- Avance**, *v.* advance, promote the cause of, ix. 5. *avaunce*, i. 70. O. F. *avancier*. L. L. *ab, ante iare*.
- Ax**, *s.* axe, vii. 84.
- Ay**, *adv.* always, i. 63, iii. 124. *ay whils*, *conj.* although, i. 28.

## B.

- Bachilere**, *s.* knight (strictly, one who is not yet a banneret), v. 48. O. F. *bachelor*. L. L. \**bacalārem*; perhaps *bacca* is L. L. for *vacca*, a cow.
- Bad**, see *Bid*.
- Bade**, see *Bede*.
- Baken**, *pp.* baked, ix. 51. The strong form is still in use in Northern dialects.
- Balde**, see *Bold*.
- Baldely**, *adv.* bravely, v. 55. *baldly*, iii. 96, vii. 83.
- Bale**, *s.* woe, mischief, i. 4, ii. 28, 29, vi. 62, viii. 20, x. 22; (?) *v.* vii. 16.
- Ban**, *v.* curse, viii. 94. Icel. *banna*, to prohibit, to curse.
- Band**, *s.* bonds, vi. 47. *bandes*, *pl.* v. 73.
- Baner**, *s.* banner, flag, i. 61, ii. 8. O. F. *banere*. L. \**bandāria*.
- Bankes**, *pl.* banks, slopes, vii. 21, viii. 20.
- Bare**, *s.* boar, vi. 53, &c. *bore*, vi. 3, vii. 21, xi. 34. *bere*, A ii. 117.

- Bare**, *adj.* stripped, ruined, ii. 20, vii. 123, x. 26; on banks bare, in open country unfortified by natural difficulties, (comp. iv. 61 note), vii. 21, viii. 20; bare of, deprived of, vi. 24, 25.
- Bare**, *pt. pl.* bore, iii. 124.
- Barely**, *adv.* utterly, or perhaps, openly, clearly, viii. 94.
- Bargan**, *s.* bargain, purchase, vii. 64. O. F. *bargaine*, as if from L. \**barcāneum*. Sturmfels (Anglia, viii. p. 235) thinks it is borrowed from O. H. G. \**bor-ganjan*, connected with O. H. G. *borgēn*, E. *borrow*.
- Barounes**, *pl.* barons, iii. 43. *barons*, v. 26. L. L. *barōnem*.
- Batail**, *s.* army, vii. 22, viii. 52. *battle*, vii. 83. *bataille*, i. T. 2, v. 83, xi. 35. *bataill*, viii. 31. *bataille*, army, ix. 8. *batayl*, v. 40, ii. T. 2. *batayle*, iv. 78. L. \**battalia*. *batale*, *v.* to fight, iv. 33.
- Be**, *v.* be, i. 43; *pr. s. subj.* vii. 113. *bene*, *pp.* iv. 13. *ert*, 2. *pr. s. art*, i. 4. *ertou*, art thou, vii. 124, 125. *es*, *pr. s. i.* 17; *pr. pl. i.* 55, v. 36 (?). *er*, 2 *pr. pl.* vi. 11. *er*, *pr. pl. i.* 39. *are*, viii. 62 (?). *was*, *pt. s. i.* 59. 2. *pt. s. vii.* 133. *war*, *pt. pl. i.* 40. *was*, i. 47, v. 30. *were*, iv. 39. *ware*, iv. 87, viii. 93. *war*, *pt. s. subj.* ii. 32, v. 5. *Bede*, *v.* offer, ii. 9, xi. 35, A ii. 233; mixed in meaning with *bide*, v. 40. *bade*, *pt. pl.* offered, v. 55. A. S. *blōdan*.
- Bedene**, see *Bidene*.
- Bekes**, *pl.* becks, brooks, A ii. 53. Icel. *bekkr*.
- Beld**, *s.* protection, help, vii. 27. A. S. *bylde*. Goth. *balpei*, boldness.
- Bende**, *v.* bend, vi. 23. *bent*, *pp.* vii. 84, 85.



- Berd**, *s.* beard, iv. 30, x. 19.  
*berde*, iv. 96.  
**Bere**, *s.* bier, vi. 48, 49.  
**Bere**, see **Bare**.  
**Berebag**, *s.* bag bearer, ii. 20, ix. 23. See note on ii. 20.  
**Bestes**, *pl.* beasts, i. 6.  
**Besy**, *adj.* zealous, eager, i. 30.  
**Bet**, *adv.* better, iii. 40 (conjecture).  
**Betes**, *pr. s.* frequents, in phrase *betes pe stretes*, ii. 25.  
**Betes**, *pr. pl.* relieve, remedy. A.S. *bétan*, to profit. L. Scotch *beit*.  
**Betin**, *pp.* beaten, ii. 8.  
**Bl**, *prep.* during, vii. 171; in accordance with, viii. 40, 63.  
**Biche**, *s.* bitch, viii. 78.  
**Bid**, 1 *pr. s.* pray, i. 3. *bad*, *pt. s.* ordered, iv. 34, vi. 63.  
**Bide**, *v.* remain, iv. 65, &c.  
**Bidene**, *adv.* together, in combination with *all*, iii. 77, viii. 11; with *ilkone*, viii. 74. *bedene*, A ii. 65. *bydene*, iv. 53. Always in rhyme and without much meaning. *Zupitza*, Guy of Warwick, explains it = *mid ene*, with once, meaning, like *at once*, (1) at the same time, (2) without delay. The difficulty of this derivation lies in *mid* = *bid*.  
**Bifall**, *v.* befall, iii. 26.  
**Bifor**, *prep.* before, vii. 22, 49, 168, &c. *bifore*, *adv.* formerly, i. 40, 90, iv. 14, x. 18. *biforn* (in rhyme) *adv.* iii. 110, A ii. 159. *byfor*, *prep.* v. 27.  
**Big**, *adj.*, strong, doughty, vii. 83. Comp. 'With mony bold men in batell and biggest in Armes,' *Troy Book*, 1032.  
**Big**, *v.* to build, viii. 26. *bigges*, *pr. s.* viii. 24. *bigged*, *pp.* vii. 168. *Icel. byggja*.  
**Bigile**, *v.* beguile, viii. 44.  
**Bigin**, *v.* begin, iv. 78, vii. 13, 20, 30, &c. *bigyn*, ix. 29. *bigins*, *pr. s.* viii. 25. *bigon*, *pt. s.* ix. 49. *bygun*, *pp.* vii. 149.  
**Biging**, *s.* house, dwelling, ii. 20, vii. 123. *biginges*, *pl.* vi. 35.  
**Bihalding**, *s.* looks, countenance, A ii. 145.  
**Biker**, *v.* fight, v. 55, xi. 34.  
**Bileuid**, *pt. s.* remained, iii. 66; *pt. pl.* vii. 101. Represents A.S. *belæfan*, to leave behind, but with meaning of A.S. *belifan*, to remain. In *Lazamon*, *bi-læuen* has both meanings.  
**Biside**, *prep.* beside, near, vii. 102, viii. 25, 28.  
**Bisschoppes**, *pl.* bishops, iii. 17, vii. 137.  
**Bithoght**, *pt. pl.* purposed, iii. 47; *pp. es* bithoght, is minded, vi. 55; *suld be bithoght*, should have weighed the matter, vii. 111. A.S. *bipencan*.  
**Bitid**, *pp.* happened, i. 73. *bityde*, 3 *imp. s.* befall, ii. 12.  
**Bitwixen**, *prep.* between, vii. 134.  
**Bityde**, see **Bitid**.  
**Bi tyme**, *adv.* in good time, soon, viii. 27.  
**Blac**, *adj.* black, x. 19.  
**Blan**, see **Blin**.  
**Blaw**, *v.* blow, iv. 80.  
**Blode**, *v.* bleed, vii. 52, 53.  
**Blin**, *v.* cease, v. 86, vi. 72, ix. 31; *subj.* x. 19. *blinned*, *pt. s.* v. 87. *blan*, vii. T. 2. A.S. *blinnan*.  
**Blis**, *s.* place of bliss, iii. 114; pleasure, joy, vi. 24, 25, vii. 167, viii. 19.  
**Blis**, 3 *imp. s.* bless, iii. 126. A.S. *blissian*, to rejoice, but with meaning of *bledsian*.  
**Blith**, *adj.* merry, vii. 128; rejoiced, viii. 49.  
**Boght**, *pp.* in dere boght, dearly atoned for, i. 43, iii. 119; *pt.*

*pl.* vii. 64. For *aboutht*, A. S. *abyrgan*, to pay for.  
**Bokes**, *pl.* books, vii. 3, 6.  
**Bold**, *adj.* daring, v. 40, 54. *bolde*, iv. 68, 76, vii. 53, 85. *balde*, xi. 13.  
**Bone**, *s.* prayer, i. 3, iv. 46.  
**Bore**, see **Bare**.  
**Born**, *pp.* borne, i. 61.  
**Bost**, *s.* boast, brag, iv. 66, v. 50, 51, vi. 26. *boste*, i. 18, 62, ii. 8, 20, v. 86, 87, viii. 85.  
**Bosting**, *s.* boasting, bragging, ii. 9.  
**Bot**, *conj.* i. 47, ii. 36, &c.; *prep.* except, ii. 18; *adv.* only, viii. 45.  
**Bote**, *s.* remedy, benefit, iv. 58, vi. 26. *bute*, i. 4, v. 6. A. S. *bót*.  
**Bote**, *s.* boat, xi. 20. *botes*, *pl.* iii. 82.  
**Boun**, *adj.* ready, prepared, xi. 34. *bourne*, i. 63, ii. 9. Icel. *búinn*, *pp.* of *búa*, to make ready.  
**Boure**, *s.* bower, room, viii. 26. A. S. *búr*.  
**Bowes**, *pl.* bows, v. 54, vi. 23, vii. 84, 85.  
**Brade**, *adj.* broad, v. 54, vii. 84.  
**Brandes**, *pl.* brands, vii. 70.  
**Brede**, *s.* bread, ix. 51.  
**Breke**, *v.* break, vi. 36. *brak*, *pt. pl.* vii. 78.  
**Bren**, *v.* burn, vii. 89. *brene*, *v.* vi. 35. *brin*, *v.* iii. 55, v. 10. *brënd*, *pt. pl.* burned, iii. 61.  
**Brenis**, *pl.* shirts of ring mail, vi. 3. Icel. *brynja*. Goth. *brunja*.  
**Brere**, *s.* briar, bush, vii. 128. A. S. *brér*.  
**Brest**, *s.* breast, vii. 22.  
**Brid**, *s.* woman, wife, i. 79. A. S. *bryd*. Goth. *bráps*.  
**Brid**, *s.* bird, vii. 128. *briddes*, *pl.* i. 6 (conjecture). A. S. *bridd*.

**Brig**, *s.* bridge, vii. 78. A. S. *brycg*.  
**Brim**, *s.* sea, flood, v. 57. A. S. *brim*, see **Skeat**, E. D.  
**Brin**, see **Bren**.  
**Brought**, *pt. s.* brought, iv. 37, viii. 52, &c.; *pt. pl.* ii. 36; *pp.* iv. 66.  
**Brwed**, *pt. s.* brewed, contrived, vi. 62.  
**Bud**, *pt. s.* behoved (used impersonally), v. 52, ix. 28. Contracted from *bihofed* or *bihoved*. A. S. *bihófan*.  
**Bukler**, *s.* shield. to play at buckler, to fence with broad sword and buckler, v. 34.  
**Burgase**, *pl.* (but same form as singular) burgesses, townsmen, viii. 65. *huriase*, *pl.* v. 15. L. *burgensis*.  
**Burne**, *s.* man, v. 40 (conjecture).  
**Busk**, *imp. s.* hasten, ii. 22. Icel. *búask*, to prepare oneself, reflexive of *búa*, to prepare.  
**Bute**, see **Bote**.  
**Bydene**, see **Bidene**.  
**Byfor**, see **Bifor**.  
**Bygun**, see **Bigin**.

## C.

**Caitefes**, *pl.* wretches, i. 75. *kaitefs*, v. 58. O. F. *caitif*, *cheitif* from L. *captivum*.  
**Cant**, *adj.* brisk, eager, vii. 107. *Skeat* refers to Suio-Gothic *kant*, pleased with oneself.  
**Cantly**, *adv.* keenly, eagerly, v. 64.  
**Cardinales**, *pl.* cardinals, viii. 40.  
**Care**, *s.* anxiety, i. 11, v. 7, &c.; affliction, distress, ii. 10, 19, &c. *cares*, *pl.* iv. 67.  
**Cast**, *pp.* thrown, v. 7. *kast*, ix. 60. *casten*, v. 57.  
**Castell**, see **Kastell**.  
**Cataille**, *s.* goods, chattels, ix. 26.

catell, vii. 124, 126. L. L. *capitalem*.  
 Chance, *s.* fortune, hap, i. 72.  
 Chaunce, i. 73.  
 Chere, *s.* looks, mien, iv. 45.  
 O. F. *chiere* from L. *caram*.  
 Gk. *kápa*, head.  
 Clene, *adv.* completely, viii. 77.  
 Clere, *adj.* bright, unclouded, iv. 48.  
 Clerk, *s.* scholar, vii. 2. *clerkes*, vii. 4, ix. 14.  
 Clip, *v.* embrace, clasp, vi. 29. A. S. *clýpan*.  
 Colde, *adj.* in cares colde, chilling, disheartening, iv. 67, vii. 87.  
 Come, Comen, see Cum.  
 Comun, *adj.* common, viii. 67.  
 Confort, *s.* comfort, strengthening, i. 83, iv. 47; *v.* to cheer, iv. 18, v. 79.  
 Conig, *s.* rabbit, viii. 75. Comp. L. L. *cuniculus*.  
 Coste, *s.* coast, country, vii. 38, x. 22.  
 Counsail, *s.* counsel, advice, vii. 112, viii. 43. *counsaille*, iii. 45.  
 Couaitise, *s.* greed, ix. 26. O. F. *coveitise*. L. L. *cupiditia*. In F. *convoitise*, the *n* is not original.  
 Craft, *s.* trade, business, v. 69.  
 Crak, *v.* crack, ii. 10. *crakked*, *pp.* i. 59, ii. 11.  
 Crede, *s.* creed, in phrase, *ken* one one's crede, to teach an elementary lesson to one, viii. 4, ix. 38, xi. 14.  
 Cri, *pr.* *pl.* with *on*, appeal to, i. 69.  
 Cros, *s.* cross, ix. 28, 64.  
 Crowne, *s.* top of the head, head, i. 59, ii. 10. *croune*, ii. 11.  
*croune*, *s.* crown, vii. 170.  
*coroun*, ix. 46.  
 Cum, *v.* come, iv. 42, vii. 9; *pr.* *pl.* viii. 91; 2 *s. subj. pr.* x. 22.  
*cumes*, *pr.* *s.* vi. 50; *pr. pl.*

vi. 43. come, *pt. s.* iii. T. 1, 86, 107, &c.; *pt. pl.* iii. 60, v. 27, &c. *comen*, *pp.* v. 64.  
*cumen*, iii. 11, iv. 29, &c.  
 Cumand, *pt. s.* commanded, iii. 53.  
 Cumandment, *s.* orders, iii. 50.  
 Cumberd, *pp.* burdened, imperilled, vii. 120. O. F. *combrer*, L. L. *combrus* (= *cumulus*) an abbatis, that is, felled timber used as a fortification. L. L. *combra* means a weir.  
 Cumen, see Cum.  
 Cumly, *adj.* comely, iv. 1, 3.  
 Kumly, vii. 95.  
 Company, *s.* company, train, iv. 21. L. L. *companium*.  
 Cuntre, *s.* country, iv. 28.  
 Custom, *s.* tribute, tax, x. 25.  
 Oyde, *s.* people, A ii. 51 (conjecture). E. *kith*.

## D.

Dais, *pl.* days, vii. 171. *dayes*, iv. 32.  
 Dale, *s.* world below, i. 8, 9; earth, grave, x. 3.  
 Dance, *s.* vii. 58, viii. 72. *daunce*, i. 66, &c.; v. ix. 3. *daunced*, *pt. pl.* v. 29.  
 Dar, *pr. s.* dare, viii. 31, xi. 34, 35. *durst*, *pt. pl.* i. 23.  
 Dare, 1 *pr. s.* to skulk, to lie hid, to lie motionless as if mased, i. 9. *dareand*, *pres. p.* i. 39. Comp. Suio-Goth. *dāra*, to be bewitched. Icel. *dār*, adjective used of numbness and fascination, *dā* catalepsy, *dā*, to be fascinated.  
 Dayes, see Dais.  
 Ded, *adj.* dead, x. 3.  
 Ded, *s.* deed, act, viii. 15. *dede*, i. 23, 52, &c. *dedes*, *pl.* i. 8, 10.  
 Ded, *s.* death, A ii. 267. *dede*,

- vi. 68. *dedes*, *gen. s.* of death, i. 26.
- Defendes*, *pr. s.* defends, iii. 7.
- Dele*, *s.* portion, deal, iii. 38.
- Delid*, *pt. pl.* dealt, distributed, vii. 141. *delt*, *pt. s.* vii. 98.
- Depe*, *s.* sea, x. 24.
- Dere*, *v.* to injure, i. 52, viii. 10, A ii. 55. A.S. *derian*. O.H.G. *terjan*.
- Dere*, *s.* injury, i. 10.
- Dere*, *adv.* dearly, i. 43, iii. 119, vii. 64.
- Dere*, *adj.* dear, vii. 126.
- Dern*, *adj.* secret, i. 10. A.S. *dierne*.
- Derue*, *adj.* terrible, bold, i. 10 (conjecture). A.S. *deorf*, tribulation. O. North. *dearf*.
- Despite*, *s.* scorn, mockery, insult, vii. 122. O.F. *despit*. L. *\*despēctum*.
- Dight*, *pp.* appointed, i. 80, vi. 7; prepared, ready, v. 25, 41, vii. 93, viii. 34, xi. 22. *dightes*, *pr. s.* prepares, vii. 36.
- Dik*, *s.* bank, ridge, A ii. 102.
- Din*, *s.* noise, v. 84.
- Diner*, *s.* dinner, xi. 22. O.F. infinitive, *disner*. L. *\*disjungere*.
- Dint*, *s.* stroke, i. 26, vii. 141. *dintes*, *pl.* vi. 34.
- Distaunce*, *s.* distance, ix. 1.
- Do*, *v.* cause, x. 24. *dose*, *pr. s.* viii. 21; *pr. pl.* i. 10 (conjecture). *did*, *pt. pl.* v. 45, 56. *done*, *pt. pl.* i. 10. *done*, *pp.* at an end, ii. 24.
- Doghty*, *adj.* doughty, brave, iii. 92, iv. 53, 77. *dughty*, ix. 39. A.S. *dyhtig*.
- Dole*, *s.* grief, sorrow, i. 80, viii. 10, A ii. 98.
- Dole*, *s.* share, portion, what is dealt out, vii. 140.
- Domes day*, *s.* day of judgment, vi. 7.
- Domp*, *v.* plunge, sink, x. 24. Icel. *dumpa*. Dan. *dumpe*.
- Done*, see *Do*.
- Dongen*, *pp.* hurled, thrown, vii. 74. Scotch. *ding*.
- Dose*, see *Do*.
- Doun*, *adv.* down, vii. 74, 159. *doune*, i. 61, ii. 8, iv. 66.
- Dout*, *s.* fear, doubt, i. 26, ii. 14, iv. 88, ix. 63, A ii. 168.
- Dowt*, *v.* to stand in fear of, vi. 34. *douted*, *pt. pl.* i. 86.
- Dray*, *s.* tumult, viii. 34. Usually *deray*, O.F. *desroi*, disorder, confusion. L. *dis\*redum*, order, (Foerster) *dis ad* and G. *rât*, counsel (Littré).
- Dred*, *s.* dread, xi. 17. *Drede*, i. 39, ix. 36, xi. 16, 36.
- Dresoe*, *imp. s.* guide, direct, i. 8. O.F. *drescer*, *drecier*. L. *\*directiare*, from *directus*.
- Drewris*, *pl.* delights, things of price, vii. 126. O.F. *druerie* as if from L. *\*druaria*. It. *druderie*. O.H.G. *drût* (Otfrid) *trût*.
- Drive*, *v.* dash on, rush, v. 41.
- Droupe*, *i pr. s.* to hang down the head, droop, i. 9. Icel. *drúpa*. See note.
- Dubbed*, *pp.* created knights, vii. 58.
- Duc*, *s.* duke, iv. 22, v. 41. *duke*, iii. 25.
- Dughty*, see *Doghty*.
- Dwell*, *v.* remain, v. 21; abide, i. 80, xi. 23; remain dead on the field, ix. 8; await battle, iv. 56. *dwelled*, *pt. s.* remained, i. 81, vii. 37.
- Dy*, *v.* die, iv. 24. *dye*, x. 24.

## E.

- Ebb*, *s.* ebb, v. 33.
- Efter*, *prep.* for, in search of, xi. 33; *adv.* iii. 49; *adj.* following, v. 31.

**Eghen**, *pl.* eyes, vii. 92. *ine*, vii. 79. A.S. *éagan*, *pl.* of *éage*.

**Els**, *adv.* else, vii. 115.

**End**, *adj.* for *endur*, former, A ii. 184. Goth. *anpar*. E. *other*.

**Engines**, *pl.* machines, xi. T. i.

**Enmys**, *pl.* enemies, i. 46.

**Entred**, *pp.* entered, vii. 35.

**Ere**, *s.* ear, iii. 86.

**Erle**, *s.* earl, i. 42, v. 37, 53.

**Erles**, *pl.* v. 26.

**Erabischoop**, *s.* archbishop, ix. 29. A.S. *ercebisceop*.

**Ertou**, see *Be*.

**Espe**, *s.* aspen, A ii. 240. *Icel.* *ösp*. A.S. *asp*.

**Eth**, *adj.* easy, v. 47. A.S. *éað*.

**Etin**, *pp.* eaten, viii. 74, 76, 77.

**Euerilka**, *adj.* every, xi. 37.

**Euermare**, *s.* evermore, viii. 64. *euermore*, vii. 154.

**Euill**, *adv.* ill, x. 27. *euil*, xi. 38. *euyll*, ix. 59.

**Euyne**, *adv.* just, even, i. 68.

## F.

**Faght**, *pt.* *s.* fought, v. 78, viii. 48; *pt. pl.* iii. 103. *foghten*, *pp.* v. 62. *fight*, v. i. 25.

**Faile**, *s.* failure, A ii. 61.

**Fain**, *adj.* glad, pleased, vi. 58. *faine*, xi. 18, 21.

**Faire**, *adj.* fair, vi. 6, viii. 73, ix. 6, 40, 46; honourable, vii. 116; *adv.* iv. 71, v. 60, 78, ix. 16.

**Fall**, *v.* befall, happen, v. 78. *fell*, *pt. s.* v. 83.

**Fals**, *adj.* false, i. 74, v. 23, vii. 62, &c.

**Falshede**, *s.* treachery, falseness, ix. 61.

**Famen**, *pl.* foemen, vi. 73, vii. 39. *fomen*, ix. 17.†

**Fand**, see *Findes*.

**Fande**, *v.* experience, vi. 45.

**fonde**, ix. 9. A.S. *fandian*, to try.

**Fare**, *s.* way of behaving, manners, especially assumption of superiority, brag, i. 24, 25, vi. 20, vii. 118, x. 5, xi. 18.

**Fare**, *v.* go, i. 13, ii. 21, iii. 53, iv. 17, &c. *ferd*, *pt. s.* iv. 19; *pt. pl.* v. 13. *fare*, *v.* speed, prosper, ix. 59, xi. 25. *fars*, *pr. s.* iii. 40.

**Fast**, *adv.* earnestly, ii. 27; vigorously, iii. 7, 61, 103; rapidly, iv. 17, 27.

**Fayled**, *pt. s.* was a defaulter, did not come, ix. 54.

**Fede**, *v.* feed, x. 4; *pr. pl.* x. 5.

**Feld**, *s.* field, plain, iii. 29; battle-field, iv. 56. **Felde**, iv. 49, 74.

**Feld**, see *Fell*.

**Felawe**, *pl.* companions, partners, vii. 135.

**Fele**, *adj.* many, iii. 17, x. 5. A.S. *fela*. O.H.G. *filu*. G. *viel*.

**Felhede**, *s.* fierceness, savagery, A ii. 38.

**Felid**, *pp.* hid, iv. 71 (conjecture).

**Fell**, *adj.* cruel, fierce, v. 23, vii. 39, viii. 33, ix. 7.

**Fell**, see *Fall*.

**Fell**, *v.* lay low, vii. 86. *feld*, *pp.* vii. 164, iv. 71 (?).

**Felony**, *s.* malice, wickedness, vii. 40.

**Fer**, *adv.* far, i. 56, iii. 73, &c. *ferr*, *comp. adv.* farther, x. 16. *fer*, x. 17.

**Ferd**, see *Fare*.

**Ferd**, *s.* fear, iv. 93, vii. 90. *ferde*, iv. 27 (always preceded by *for*).

**Fere**, *v.* to terrify, vii. 69. *ferd*, *pp.* as *adj.* afraid, iv. 61, viii. 93.

**Fere**, *s.* companion, partner, vi. 46. A.S. *geſetra*.

**Ferene**, *s.* fern, bracken, iv. 71.

**Ferlys**, *pl.* wonders, marvels, A ii. 2. A.S. *adj. færlic*, sudden.

- Fers**, *adj.* fierce, viii. 33, ix. 7.  
O. F. *fiers*. L. *fērus*.
- Fille**, *s.* vile person, coward, vii. 139, viii. 47. Variant of *vile*; comp. 'For this sclaunder that was so fyle,' Alisaunder, 1003.
- Fill**, *s.* as much as satisfies, v. 62, x. 20.
- Findes**, *pr. s.* finds, ii. 28. *fand*, *pt. s.* found, vii. 39, 49, ix. 20, xi. 16, 17; *pt. pl.* iii. 93, xi. 21. *fun*, *pp.* viii. 93. *funden*, viii. 47, 50.
- Fine**, *v.* come to an end, die, x. 17. *fyne*, come to terms, or perhaps, cease fighting, xi. 21.
- Fissches**, *pl.* fishes, x. 4, 5.
- Flay**, *v.* terrify, ix. 17. A. S. *flēgan*, northern form of *flēgan*, to put to flight (Sievers, § 384 a).
- Fle**, *v.* flee, escape, iii. 70, iv. 60. *fled*, *pt. s.* iv. 27, 93. *fleand*, *pr. p.* vii. 90. *fled*, *pp.* viii. 80.
- Flemid**, *pp.* exiled, i. 44. A. S. *flēman*, to put to flight.
- Flesch**, *s.* flesh, i. 20.
- Flit**, *v.* remove, get away, x. 17. Icel. *flytja*.
- Flode**, *s.* sea, iii. 83, 121, v. 46. *flude*, iii. 76, v. 78.
- Floure** (de lice), *s.* fleur de lis, lily flower, iv. 25. *flowre*, iv. 91. *flowres*, *pl.* ix. 6. *floures*, ix. 7.
- Flude**, see **Flode**.
- Flye**, *s.* fly, i. 24.
- Flye**, *v.* fly, vii. 70.
- Fode**, *s.* person, vi. 71. A. S. *fōda*, food.
- Foghten**, see **Faght**.
- Fold**, *s.* earth, land, viii. 18. A. S. *folde*. Icel. *fold*.
- Fomen**, see **Famen**.
- Fonde**, see **Fande**.
- Fone**, *adj.* few, ii. 28, v. 45. *funne*, ii. 29. A. S. *fla*, indecl. in sing. but strong in pl. *flawe*.
- For**, *prep.* in spite of, iii. 26, vi. 20, xi. 18; on account of, iii. 54, vii. 23. *for to*, with infinitive of purpose, iii. 24, iv. 72, 84, &c.
- Forbere**, *v.* spare, forbear, viii. 12.
- Forgat**, *pt. pl.* forgot, vii. 67.
- Forgone**, *pp.* foregone, ix. 46.
- Forlore**, *pp.* lost, vii. 59. From M. E. *forlesen*.
- Forsaid**, *pp.* aforesaid, before mentioned, i. 57.
- Forpi**, *adv.* on that account, vii. 75. *pi*, instrumental case of *se*, that.
- Forward**, *s.* compact, agreement, ix. 53, 58, 59. A. S. *foreweard*, previous guard.
- Fote**, *dat. pl.* feet, iv. 59, vi. 30.
- Founded**, *pt. s.* prepared to go, went, i. 12. A. S. *fundjan*, to hasten, to make for.
- Fra**, *prep.* from, i. 44. Icel. *frá*. Dan. *fra*. Lowl. Scotch, *fræ*.
- Franche**, *adj.* French, i. 13, vii. 77, 118, xi. 24.
- Frankis**, *adj.* French, vi. 20. *frankisch*, vii. 86.
- Fre**, *adj.* noble, courteous, iv. 10, 29, A ii. 96.
- Frek**, *adj.* eager, keen, i. 13, iv. 54, 84. Comp. *Fryke* or *craske*, or *yn grete helthe*, Prompt. Parv. p. 179. A. S. *frec*. Goth. *\*friks*.
- Frely**, *adj.* noble, courteous, vi. 71. A. S. *frēolic*.
- Frend**, *s.* friend, vii. 161. *frende*, vi. 19. *frendes*, *pl.* ii. 28, vii. 75.
- Frendschip**, *s.* friendship, vi. 45, vii. 115.
- Frere**, *s.* friar, vii. 131.
- Frith**, *s.* forest (properly, an enclosed hunting-ground), iii. 29. A. S. *frip*, peace, protection, and

in composition, fenced in. Comp.  
 'the foreste wele frythede,' Awn-  
 tyrs of Arthure, 7, and Catholi-  
 con Anglicum, p. 143.  
*Fro*, *prep.* from, i. 56, &c.  
*Ful*, *adv.* i. 76, ii. 6, 31, &c.  
 full, iii. 87, v. 76, vii. 162.  
*Ful*, *adj.* full, vii. 22, 40.  
*Fun*, *Fundon*, see *Findea*.  
*Fune*, see *Fone*.  
*Furth*, *adv.* forth, iv. 19, ix. 25,  
 47, x. 7.  
*Fyne*, see *Fine*.

## G.

*Gaf*, see *Gif*.  
*Gai*, *adj.* gay, i. 41.  
*Galaies*, *pl.* galleys, iii. 51.  
*galayes*, iii. 60, 78. *galays*,  
 iii. 79.  
*Galay men*, *pl.* galley-men, iii. 57,  
 71, 93, 105, 120.  
*Gale*, *s.* wrong, injury, vi. 66 (see  
 note).  
*Galiotes*, *pl.* vessels of the galley  
 type but smaller than galleys,  
 iii. 81.  
*Gamed*, *pt. s.* pleased, iv. 57  
 (conjecture).  
*Gan*, *pt. s.* began, but used as  
 auxiliary = did, vii. 69, ix. 16;  
*pt. pl. i.* 22, iii. 113, ix. 64, x. 10.  
*A. S. ginnan*.  
*Gapin*, *pr. pl.* gape, vii. 135.  
*Gase*, *pr. pl.* goes, ii. 25.  
*Gat*, *pt. pl.* got, v. 70. *get*, *pr. pl.*  
 viii. 3.  
*Gate*, *s.* way, vi. 54, vii. 48, xi.  
 28. *Icel. gata*, way. *Swed.*  
*gata*.  
*Gaudes*, *pl.* tricks, wiles, i. 87, ii.  
 18, 30. *L. gaudium*.  
*Gayned*, *pt. s.* availed, benefited,  
 iv. 57.  
*Gayt*, *s.* goat, A ii. 39.  
*Geder*, *v.* come together, xi. 3.  
*Gentill*, *adj.* gentle, vii. 142;  
 noble, xi. T. 1, 13.

*Ger*, *v.* make, cause, vii. 42. *gert*,  
*pt. s.* iii. 43, vi. 66, vii. 99; *pt.*  
*pl. iv.* 80, v. 86, vii. 87, x. 16.  
*gert*, *pp.* vii. 52. *Icel. gert(v)a*.  
*Gestes*, *pl.* guests, xi. 29.  
*Get*, *imp. pl.* be on guard, ii. 36.  
*Icel. gaeta*.  
*Gif*, 3 *imp. s.* give, v. 39, 81, vii.  
 29. *giff*, iv. 90. *gaf*, *pt. s.*  
 gave, i. 83; *pt. pl. iv.* 85, v. 70.  
*gifen*, *pp.* viii. 88.  
*Giftes*, *pl.* gifts, vi. 64.  
*Gile*, *s.* guile, i. 86, ii. 6, 12, vii.  
 136, &c.  
*Glade*, *v.* cheer, gladden, v. 53.  
*Gle*, *s.* joy, pleasure, iii. 69, iv. 57  
 (see note, and Bruce, Glossary,  
 s. v. *gle*).  
*Goddes*, *gen. s.* God's, iii. 10.  
*Gode*, *adj.* vi. 80, A ii. 19. *gude*,  
 i. 83, ii. 14, &c. *gode*, *s.* pro-  
 perty, wealth, iii. 84. *gude*,  
 iii. 122, v. 70. *gudes*, *pl.* viii.  
 11, 14, x. 10.  
*Grame*, *s.* hurt, injury, v. 18.  
*A. S. grama*. *Icel. gramr*.  
*Graunt*, *v.* grant, vi. 59. *grante*,  
 viii. 46; 3 *imp. s.* iii. 4, 8, vi. 80.  
*Graythest*, *adj.* directest, vii. 48.  
 Superlative of *grayth*, exact,  
 direct. *Icel. greidr*.  
*Grene*, *s.* common, battlefield, vi.  
 4, vii. 102, xi. 3. *grene*, *s.*  
 green-coloured cloth, x. 12.  
*Grete*, *adj.* great, i. 11, iii. 21,  
 &c.; *pl.* great men, v. 80.  
*Grete*, *imp. pl.* s. greet; xi. 28.  
*gretes*, xi. 29.  
*Gude*, *Gudes*, see *Gode*.  
*Gudely*, *adv.* kindly, v. 80, 81.  
*Gyn*, *s.* device, vii. 150. *O. F.*  
*engin*. *L. ingenium*.

## H.

*Habide*, *Habyde*, see *Abide*.  
*Hald*, *v.* hold, iii. 24; 3 *imp. s.*  
 xi. 10. *halde*, *pr. s.* vi. 51.  
*held*, *pt. s.* iv. 36, vii. 171.

- Halely**, *adv.* completely, iv. 92.  
**Haly**, *adj.* holy, i. 78, iii. 126.  
**Haly Gaste**, Holy Spirit, iv. 8, vii. 28, 29.  
**Hame**, *adv.* home, iv. 89. **home**, s. ix. 18.  
**Hand**, s. hand, iii. 126, vi. 43. **handes**, *pl.* iii. 57, v. 72. **hend**, *pl.* iii. 32.  
**Harmes**, *pl.* injuries, ii. 26, vi. 15, 43.  
**Hasted**, *pt. s.* hastened, iv. 60, v. 22.  
**Hastily**, *adv.* speedily, vii. 66. **hastly**, vi. 44.  
**Hat**, *pr. s.* is called, iv. 74. **hight**, *pt. s.* was called, vii. 2. The latter answers to A.S. *heht*, past of *hētan*, to call, the former represents a passive form of *hētan*. See Zupitza, Guy of Warwick, ii. p. 348.  
**Hattes**, *pl.* hats, viii. 41.  
**Haue**, v. have, i. 29; *pr. pl.* i. 38. **hae**, *pr. s.* ii. 4. **hauue**, ix. 45, i. 36; 2 *pr. pl.* ix. 60. **had**, *pt. s.* i. 11; *pt. pl.* i. 26. **haued**, *pt. s.* ix. 36, 40, xi. 16; *pt. pl.* ix. 63.  
**Hele**, v. hide, vi. 16. **helis**, *imp. pl.* vi. 17. A.S. *helan*, L. *celare*.  
**Hele**, s. health, well-being, xi. 10, A ii. 156. A.S. *hēl*.  
**Helmis**, *pl.* helmets, vii. 105.  
**Helpid**, *pt. s.* helped, availed, v. 35, 37, vii. 100.  
**Hend**, see **Hand**.  
**Hende**, *adv.* quickly, vi. 17 (see note); *adj.* gracious, vii. 34. **hinde**, dexterous, ix. 37.  
**Hent**, *pt. pl.* seized, ix. 24; *pp.* received, vi. 15. A.S. *hentan*.  
**Hepe**, s. heap, v. 46.  
**Here**, v. hear, iii. 50, vi. 44; 1 *pr. s.* i. 65. **heres**, *imp. pl.* vii. 169. **herd**, *pt. s.* iii. 41, iv. 40, 55; *pt. pl.* v. 19, viii. 35.  
**Here**, *adv.* comp. of *heah*, high, but on here seems to mean simply, on high, x. 14. Perhaps it is *herre*, A.S. *heorr*, hinge.  
**Hereof**, *adv.* of this, v. 19.  
**Heried**, *pt. s.* harrowed, plundered, vii. 34. A.S. *hergian*, Goth. *harjis*, army.  
**Herkins**, *imp. pl.* listen, vi. T. i.  
**Hernes**, *pl.* brains, iii. 68, A ii. 174. A.S. *pl. hæernes*. L. *cerebrum*.  
**Hert**, s. heart, i. 11, 21, vi. 52, 69, vii. 127, xi. 17. **hertes**, *pl.* iii. 78, v. 30.  
**Hetes**, *pr. s.* promises, ii. 26, vi. 51. A.S. *hētan*.  
**Heuidles**, *adj.* headless, iii. 100.  
**Heuyd**, s. head, iii. 65, vii. 59. **heuiddes**, *pl.* iv. 72.  
**Heuyn**, s. heaven, i. 35. **heuyn**, xi. 40.  
**Hide**, v. hide, vi. 16. **hides**, *imp. pl.* vi. 17. **hid**, *pp.* killed (?), i. 77. **hided**, *pt. pl.* x. 11.  
**Hied**, see **Hye**.  
**Hight**, see **Hat**.  
**Hight**, s. high, A ii. 236.  
**Hire**, s. reward, pay, iii. 100, vii. 66, viii. 66. **hure**, A i. 50.  
**Holl**, s. hull, x. 10, 11. A.S. *hol*, but see *Skeat*, suppl. to Etymol. Dict., p. 81.  
**Honowre**, s. honour, iii. 21, iv. 92, ix. 42.  
**Hors**, s. horse, iv. 59.  
**Houed**, *pt. pl.* cruised, awaited in readiness, iii. 83, 121. M. E. *houen*.  
**Hundereth**, hundred, iii. 94. **hundreth**, iii. 110, v. 71. Comp. Icel. *hundrað*.  
**Hund**, s. dog, viii. 21. **hundes**, *pl.* viii. 76.  
**Hurdis**, s. bulwark, wooden rampart, x. 14 (see note). O. F. *hourde*. Gothic *haurds*. L. *crates*.  
**Hure**, see **Hire**.



**Hye**, *v.* hie, hasten, i. 22. **hied**,  
*pt. s.* iv. 89.

## I.

**Iapes**, *pl.* tricks, iv. 15. **F. japper**, to bark.

**Ilk**, *adj.* each, iii. 89, vii. 81.  
*A. S. dlc.*

**Ilka**, *adj.* every, i. 19, vi. 12.  
Shortened from *ilkan*.

**Ilkone**, *pron.* every one, viii. 74.  
*A. S. dlc and dn.*

**In**, *prep.* on, i. 1.

**Ine**, see **Elghen**.

**Ines**, *pl.* dwelling, viii. 27, ix. 52.  
Comp. for plural, 'Syne till his  
Innys can he ga,' Bruce, xx. 354.

**Inglis**, *adj.* English, vii. 65, 81.

**Ingliss**, vii. 122. **Inglisch**,

*V. T. 2.*

**Inogh**, *adj.* enough, v. 9, vii.  
153.

**Iornay**, *s.* expedition, iii. 40;  
business, A ii. 163. *O. F. jornee.*  
*L. diurnatam.*

**Iwis**, *adv.* truly, certainly, iii. 42,  
&c. Always *I wis* in MS.  
*A. S. gewis*, certain.

## K.

**Kales**, see **Kayes**.

**Kaitéfs**, see **Caitefes**.

**Kast**, see **Oast**.

**Kastell**, *s.* castle, xi. 11, 30.  
*castell*, xi. 15.

**Kayes**, *pl.* keys, ii. 36, viii. 88.  
*kales*, viii. 89.

**Kayser**, *s.* emperor, iii. 13.

**Ken**, *v.* know, viii. 8. *teach*,  
vi. 39, viii. 4, xi. 14; *1 pr. pl.*  
v. 87. *kend*, *pt. s.* taught, ix.  
38; *pp.* known, viii. 9. *Icel.*  
*kenna*, *teach*, *know*.

**Kene**, *adj.* eager, bold, fierce, ii. 2,  
iii. 78, iv. 52, &c.; *adv.* v. 64.

**Kepe**, *v.* keep, retain, viii. 90, xi.  
11, encounter to stop, x. 23.

**keped**, *pt. s.* encountered, iv.  
96. *Comp.* Ywayne, 1386,  
1877, Troy Book, 6875.

**Kid**, see **Kith**.

**Kind**, *s.* people, race, A ii. 277.

**Kindel**, *v.* light up, originate, ii.

10. *kindels*, *pr. s.* ii. 19, x.

23. *kindeld*, *pp.* xi. 26.

Wülker connects it with M. E.  
*cundlen*, to bring forth young.

**Kinges**, *gen. s.* king's, iii. 24, 50;  
*pl.* vii. 112.

**Kirtell**, *s.* kirtle, shirt, viii. 61.

*A. S. cyrtel.* See Planche, Cy-  
clopaedia of Costume, i. p. 320.

**Kith**, *v.* display, show, v. 69.

*kid*, *pp.* made known, i. 75.

*A. S. cyðan.*

**Knaw**, *v.* know, v. 47; *1 pr. pl.*  
vii. 125.

**Knele**, *v.* kneel, ix. 28.

**Knight**, *pl.* knights, v. 26.

*Knyght*, A ii. 75. *knights*,

*pl.* iv. 29, 52, vii. 57, viii. 59.

**Knok**, *v.* knock, strike, vii. 130.

*knoked*, *pp.* iii. 68.

**Knokkes**, *pl.* blows, vii. 98.

**Kogges**, *pl.* cogs, v. 73 (see note  
on iii. 79). *Icel. kuggr.*

**Kouth**, see **Kun**.

**Kumly**, see **Cumly**.

**Kun**, *pr. s.* knows how, is able,  
viii. 90. *kouth*, *pt. s.* knew, v.

69. *A. S. cunnan.*

**Kynrik**, *s.* kingdom, A ii. 25.

*A. S. cynerlice.*

**Kys**, *v.* kiss, vi. 28.

## L.

**Land**, *s.* earth, vi. 41. *londe*,  
*country*, ix. 12.

**Lang**, *adv.* long, iii. 104, *adj.* xi.

19. *langer*, *adv.* longer, iv.

16, 35, 65, v. 21, vi. 63, vii. 80.

*lenger*, *adj.* iv. 35. *leng*,

*comp. adj.* and *adv.* conjecture

in, iv. 35, vii. 80.

- Lare**, *s.* teaching, lesson, v. 9, vi. 22, x. 28, 29.
- Lat**, *v.* let, vii. 115; 3 *imp. s.* viii. 90. *lete*, *pt. s.* vii. 91.
- Lates**, *pl.* doings, behaviour, A ii. 172. *Icel. lät.*
- Law**, *adv.* low, vii. 97, 127, ix. 64, 65.
- Laykes**, *pl.* games, sports, iii. 64. A. S. *lācan*, to play.
- Layne**, see **Lig**.
- Ledderr**, *s.* ladder, xi. 19.
- Lede**, *v.* guide, i. 35, xi. 39.
- Ledeing**, *s.* command, viii. 54.
- Leders**, *pl.* guides, commanders, viii. 94.
- Lele**, *adj.* true, not counterfeit, iii. 37.
- Lely**, *s.* lily, iv. 91, xi. 3.
- Lely**, *adv.* verily, vii. 73.
- Len**, 3 *imp. pr. s.* grant, xi. 39. A. S. *lēnan*.
- Lend**, *pt. pl. contracted*, dwelt, remained, iii. 31. *lended*, *pt. pl.* remained, viii. 45. A. S. *lendan*, properly, to land, to arrive. *Icel. lenda*.
- Leng**, **Lenger**, see **Lang**.
- Lepe**, *v.* leap, v. 45; *imp. s.* xi. 27.
- Lepes**, *pl.* lips, A ii. 16.
- Lere**, *v.* teach, v. 58, vi. 42, learn, viii. 57, x. 28, 29. *lered*, *pt. pl.* taught, v. 14, 34.
- Lese**, *s.* falsehood, deceit, A ii. 185. A. S. *lās*. Goth. *laus*.
- Lete**, see **Lat**.
- Let**, *v.* hinder, ix. 18. *letes*, *pr. s.* ix. 19. *lett*, *pt. pl.* iii. 64.
- Letherin**, *adj.* leathern, xi. 19.
- Leue**, *v.* believe, v. 9; 2 *pr. pl.* vi. 22. *leues*, *imp. pl.* iii. 117, iv. 73. A. S. *gelyfan*.
- Leue**, *s.* leave, vi. 61.
- Leued**, *pt. pl.* remained, ix. 65 (aphetic for *beleued*). *leuid*, *pp.* left, i. 55, viii. 78. A. S. *bellfan*.
- Lewte**, *s.* truthfulness, A ii. 149. F. *loialté* = *loial-tatem*.
- Lien**, see **Lig**.
- Lif**, *v.* live, iv. 24. *lifes*, *pr. pl.* iii. 118.
- Lig**, *v.* lie, remain, vii. 80, 87. *ligges*, *pr. pl.* iii. 99. *lien*, vii. 135. *lye*, *pt. pl.* vii. 73. *li-gand*, *pres. p.* viii. 71. *layne*, *pp.* laid, A i. 7. M. E. *liggen*.
- Likid**, *pt. s.* it pleased, vii. 80.
- Line**, *s.* rope, xi. 19.
- Lipard**, *s.* leopard, xi. 3. What are now lions in the English shield were then leopards.
- List**, *pt. s. contracted*, it pleased, i. 71. A. S. *lȳstan*.
- List**, *s.* skill, cunning, vi. 42. A. S. *list*, wisdom.
- Listens**, *imp. pl.* listen, iii. 117.
- lystens**, *imp. pl.* viii. 57.
- Litell**, *s.* little way, i. 57, *adj.* little, i. 82. *litill*, iv. 26, viii. 45.
- Lithes**, *imp. pl.* listen, i. T. 1, v. T. 1. *Icel. hlýða*.
- Liue**, *s.* life, i. 89. *lives*, *pl.* vii. 143.
- Londe**, see **Land**.
- Lordes**, *pl.* lords, iii. 31, 44, iv. 52.
- Lorn**, *pp.* lost, iv. 92. *lorne*, A ii. 8. A. S. *lōsan* with *pp. loren*.
- Loud** or **still**, under all circumstances, viii. 54.
- Lout**, *v.* bow low to, vi. 40, 41, vii. 97, ix. 64, x. 29. *louted*, *pt. pl.* ix. 65. A. S. *lūtan*, to bow.
- Luf**, *s.* love, vii. 144.
- Luked**, *pt. s.* looked, ix. 47.
- Lye**, see **Lig**.
- Lye**, *s.* lie, falsehood, iv. 73.
- Lystens**, see **Listens**.

## M.

- Ma**, *adj.* more (in number), i. 42, 48, 49. *mo*, *adj.* iii. 16, 79, v. 71.

- Mai**, 2 *pr. pl.* may, viii. 1. moght, *pt. s.* might, vi. 58; 2 *pt. s.* vii. 121. moght really corresponds to M. E. pres. *mouse*. Koch, Eng. Gram. i. p. 355, 6.
- Main**, *s.* might, ability, vi. 77. *maine*, i. 85. A. S. *māgen*.
- Maintene**, *v.* maintain, i. 36, vii. 114. L. *manum tenere* or *manu tingere* (Anglia, viii. p. 251).
- Maistri**, *s.* superiority, show of superiority, iii. 113, vii. 41.
- Mak**, *v.* make, i. 62, v. 10, &c. make, v. 1. makes, *pr. pl.* v. 3. mase, makes, viii. 34. maked, *pt. pl.* i. 49. makked, vii. 41. made, v. 84.
- Manasinges**, *pl.* threats, menaces, i. 49. Present participle of *manase* = L. *minatias* (facere).
- Mane**, see **Mone**.
- Manere**, *s.* way, fashion, vii. 116, ix. 55.
- Mani**, *adj.* many, iii. 5, iv. 3, v. 48, &c. many, iii. 105, v. 18, &c.
- Manikyn**, *adj.* many kinds of, A ii. 1. Comp. *monies kunnes*, Lajamon, 1710.
- Mans**, *gen. s.* man's, xi. 9. men, *pl.* v. 34, 46, &c. mens, *gen. pl.* iii. 84, v. 2.
- Marchandes**, *pl.* merchants, x. 26. O. F. *merchant*. L. *\*mercantem*.
- Marche**, *s.* boundary, district, A ii. 78.
- Mare**, *adj.* more, viii. 3.
- Mase**, see **Mak**.
- Maste**, *adj.* most, iv. 7, vii. 26. mast, *adv.* A ii. 81.
- Mater**, *s.* subject, vii. 17.
- Mawgre**, *s.* misfortune, what is displeasing, i. 50. F. *mal gré*. L. *malum gratum*.
- Mede**, *s.* reward, i. 50, v. 39, 81, &c.
- Mekill**, *adj.* much, great, i. 85, iii. 18, 38, 62, &c. mekil, v. 51, xi. 27. A. S. *micel*.
- Mend**, *pp.* behaved, acted, i. 29. Aphetic for *demeaned*.
- Mend**, *imp. pl.* amend, viii. 7.
- Mene**, 1 *pr. s.* signify, intend, xi. 4, 5. menid, *pp.* v. 1. ment, v. 24.
- Mens**, see **Mans**.
- Menje**, *s.* army, followers, i. 82, iv. 11, x. T. I. L. *\*manionata* for *\*mansionata*, household.
- Mere**, *s.* mother, A ii. 80.
- Meri**, *adj.* merry, v. 32.
- Merkes**, *pl.* mark, object, ix. 13.
- Mete**, *s.* meat, iv. 85.
- Mete**, *v.* meet, v. 23. metes, *pr. s.* ii. 27. met, *pt. pl.* vii. 63. mett, *pp.* iii. 63. met, ix. 4.
- Mi**, *adj.* my, v. 4, 5.
- Middes**, *s.* midst, v. 56.
- Midelerd**, *s.* the earth, i. 5.
- Might**, *s.* power, might, iii. 8, vii. 31, 43. myght, iii. 112. mightes, *pl.* iv. 7, vii. 26.
- Minde**, *s.* remembrance, thought, xi. 4.
- Mirthes**, *pl.* joy, vi. 27.
- Mis**, *v.* want, feel the want of, iii. 113, vi. 27. mys, vii. 119. missed, *pt. s.* ix. 13.
- Misbyde**, *v.* to injure, A ii. 52. A. S. *misblōdan*.
- Mischance**, *s.* misfortune, iv. 20, viii. 30, ix. 4.
- Misdede**, *s.* misdeed, viii. 7.
- Misfare**, *pr. s. subj.* fare badly, x. 27.
- Misliked**, *pt. s.* it displeased, vii. 60.
- Misliking**, *s.* displeasure, vii. 61.
- Mo**, see **Ma**.
- Mode**, *s.* mood, mind, vi. 77.
- Moder**, *s.* mother, iv. 10.
- Mody**, *adj.* courageous, proud, v. 42. A. S. *mōdig*. Goth. *mōdags*.
- Moght**, see **Mai**.

**Mold**, *s.* earth, viii. 3.  
**Moldwerp**, *s.* mole, A ii. 213.  
 M. E. *molde*, earth, and *werpen*, to cast.  
**Mone**, *s.* moon, i. 5.  
**Mone**, *s.* complaint, ii. 27, ix. 45, xi. 5. *mane*, iii. 108.  
**Mone**, *s.* money, iii. 35, 37.  
**More**, *s.* moor, ix. 4.  
**Mot**, 3 *imp. pr. s.* may, i. 33, 35, v. 53, xi. 38; may it, v. 78; 2 *imp. pr. s.* ix. 59; 3 *imp. pr. pl.* i. 50. *mote*, A i. 9. *most*, *pt. pl.* must, i. 67, 80, iii. 72, x. 17, 18.  
**Mote**, *v.* discuss the point, vi. 28. Literally, to plead a law-case. A. S. *mōt*, assembly; *mōt-hus*, place for discussion.  
**Mowth**, *s.* mouth, v. 1, vii. 7.  
**Mun**, *pr. s.* must, iii. 119; *pr. pl.* i. 48; 2 *pr. pl.* vi. 27, viii. 2. O. N. *mono* later *munu*.  
**Murning**, *s.* mourning, sorrow, vii. 119, viii. 2.  
**Myght**, see **Might**.  
**Myle**, *s.* the time it takes to walk a mile, i. 84. Comp. G. *stunde*, hour and hence hour's walk. *myle*, *pl.* miles, viii. 42.  
**Mys**, see **Mis**.  
**Myst**, *s.* mist, iv. 43.

## N.

**Nakers**, *pl.* kettledrums, iv. 80, A i. 35. See **Prompt. Parvulorum**, p. 350. F. *nacaire*. L. L. *nacara*, from Arab. *naqāra*, drum.  
**Nane**, *pron.* none, iii. 107.  
**Ne**, *conj.* nor, iii. 110, viii. 75, 78; *adv.* not, iv. 36, v. 15, viii. 76.  
**Nede**, *s.* need, time of need, v. 37, xi. 37. *nedes*, *adv.* of necessity, iii. 72, ix. 28.  
**Neghed**, *pt. pl.* approached, x. 15.  
**Nere**, *adv.* near, iv. 41, 42. *nerr*, *comp. adv.* nearer, x. 15.

**Neuer**, *adv.* never, ix. 31. *neuer pe les*, *adv.* nevertheless, i. 63.  
**Nighes**, *pl.* nights, i. 51, vii. 171.  
**Nobill**, *adj.* noble, iv. 22, vii. 18, viii. 65.  
**Nobillay**, *s.* renown, fame, A ii. 156. O. F. *noblee*, from *nobleier*, to excel. L. *nobilizare*. See Koch's *Chardry*, p. 193.  
**Noght**, *adv.* not, i. 16, 21, &c.; *s.* nothing, i. 47, iii. 48, viii. 55, x. 21.  
**Nokes**, *pl.* nooks, vii. 5.  
**Nomen**, *pt. pl.* took, ix. 53. A. S. *niman*.  
**No thing**, *adv.* not at all, vii. 146.  
**Noumber**, *s.* number, iii. 82.  
**Nowþer**, *conj.* neither, vii. 100, viii. 75. *nowther*, viii. 78.

## O.

**About**, *adv.* approximately, i. 84; around, ii. 15, vi. 36, vii. 96; employed on, i. 30, ix. 61; *prep.* round, iv. 63, viii. 68.  
**Of**, *prep.* on account of, iii. 58.  
**O-ferrum**, *adv.* afar, at a distance, vii. 70, 89. For *on ferrum* (dative); see **Skeat**, **Etymol.** Dict. *afar*, and comp. **Cursor**, 5751.  
**Ogayn**, *adv.* back, i. 15. *ogaines*, *prep.* against, i. 14. *ogaynes*, iii. 94, 98. *oganis*, iv. 38.  
**Okes**, *pl.* oaks, iv. 62.  
**Oliue**, *adj.* alive, v. 44, 45. A. S. *on life* (dat.), but *of lyue* with same meaning in **Horstmann**, A. L. ii. 353/354, and *oliue* meaning dead, id. 229/128.  
**Omang**, *prep.* among, vii. 110, 142.  
**On**, *prep.* by, vii. 104, viii. 79; against, x. 21. *one*, on, viii. 61.  
**Opon**, *prep.* upon, i. 56, iii. 76, &c.  
**Or**, *conj.* before, iii. 63, vi. 48, vii. 130, 164. A. S. *ær*.

**Ordanis**, *pr. s.* determines, iv. 5.  
*O. F. ordener. L. ordinare.*  
**Opera**, *adj. gen.* of the other, vii. 81.  
**Oure**, *adj.* our, i. 81, iii. 11, vii. 170.  
**Outen**, *adj.* foreign, A ii. 181.  
**Outraid**, *pt. s.* squandered, threw away, A ii. 124. *F. outrage. L. \*ultra-ditum.*  
**Oway**, *adj.* gone, worthless, v. 36, away, vii. 117, xi. 1; *adv.* away, vii. 116.

## P.

**Palays**, *s.* palace, vii. 166.  
**Palet**, *s.* head, vii. 130. *O. F. palet, sort of head-piece. See Prompt. Parvulorum, p. 378.*  
**Pall**, *s.* robe, stately dress, vii. 110. *A. S. pall from L. palla.*  
**Pas**, *v.* escape, iii. 56; 2 *pr. s. subj.* vii. 130.  
**Pauliyoune**, *s.* tent, iv. 63. *pauliownes, pl. flags, xi. 32. O. F. pavellon. L. papilionem.*  
**Pay**, *s.* satisfaction, iii. 10. *F. paier. L. pacare.*  
**Pelers**, *pl.* plunderers, thieves, ii. 15. *F. piller, to rob.*  
**Pencell**, *s.* pennon, little banner, vii. 46. *O. F. penoncel (through penocel). L. \*pennionem-ic-il-lum.*  
**Pere**, *s.* peer, equal, iii. 14.  
**Pere**, *s.* pear, i. 16, 17.  
**Pese**, *s.* peace, i. 92.  
**Pine**, *s.* trouble, vii. 77, xi. 20. *A. S. pin from L. poena.*  
**Pitaile**, *s.* infantry, vii. 56. *O. F. pictaille. L. \*pédalia.*  
**Plaine**, *s.* field of battle, i. 83.  
**Plate**, *s.* plate armour, vii. 46.  
**Play**, *s.* pleasure, vii. 108.  
**Playne**, *adj.* of full value, iii. 35. *F. plein. L. plenus.*  
**Pleyn**, *v.* complain, vii. 76. *O. F. plaindre. L. plangere.*

**Pointes**, *pl.* plans, iii. 46.  
**Polled**, *pp.* cropped, vii. 131.  
**Pople**, *s.* people, iii. 19. *puple, viii. 67.*  
**Pouer**, *adj.* poor, iii. 122.  
**Prais**, 1 *pr. s.* praise, vii. 109, 146. *prays, v. 59.*  
**Pray**, *s.* prey, i. 38.  
**Prelates**, Church clergy, *pl.* iii. 17.  
**Prese**, *s.* throng (of battle), i. 90, vii. 45; throng (of courtiers), vii. 109.  
**Prest**, *adj.* ready, v. 61, vii. 25, viii. 67, A ii. 231. *O. F. prest. L. \*praestum.*  
**Priked**, *pp.* spurred, ridden hard, ii. 15.  
**Prise**, *s.* value, i. 17; fame, glory, iv. 26. *O. F. pris. L. pretium.*  
**Priue**, *adj.* secret, privy, vii. 5.  
**Proferd**, *pt. pl.* offered, iii. 23.  
**Proper**, *adj.* stout, fit, vii. 25.  
**Proue**, *v.* test, try the value of, iv. 15, v. 61. *proued, pt. pl. tried, vii. 42.*  
**Prowd**, *adj.* proud, vii. 110.  
**Puple**, see **Pople**.  
**Purohas**, *s.* gain, A i. 55. *O. F. purchacier. L. \*procaptiare.*  
**Purpos**, *s.* intention, purpose, viii. 39. *purpose, xi. 23.*  
**Puruay**, *v.* provide for, iv. 34. *O. F. pourveoir. L. providere.*  
**Puruance**, *s.* provision, management, vii. 146.  
**Puttes**, *imp. pl.* put, xi. 32. *put, pt. pl. iii. 95, vii. 77.*

## Q.

**Quell**, *v.* kill, v. 24. *qwell, i. 78.*  
**Quit**, *pt. pl.* paid, vii. 66. See next word.  
**Quite**, *adj.* deprived of, vii. 124, 125. *O. F. quite. L. \*quitum.*

## R.

**Rade**, see **Ride**.

**Bailed**, *pp.* set in order, iv. 83.

O. H. G. *rigil*.

**Rapes**, *pl.* ropes, viii. 68.

**Rapely**, *adv.* quickly, hastily, vi. 67. Icel. *hrapa*, to hasten.

**Rathly**, *adv.* quickly, vii. 91, viii. 6. A. S. *hraðe*.

**Raw**, *s.* line or order (of battle), iv. 79, v. 48. *row*, line, iv. 83.

**Reche**, *v.* reach, vii. 15.

**Rede**, *v.* read, vii. 1.

**Rede**, *s.* advice, counsel, iii. 23.

**Rede**, *i pr. s.* advise, x. 19. A. S. *rædan*.

**Rede**, *adj.* red, viii. 41, A ii. 30.

**Bedles**, *adj.* without counsel, without resource, vi. 14, 37.

**Redy**, *adj.* prepared, i. 32, 33, &c.; prompt, ix. 43.

**Reght**, see **Right**.

**Ren**, *v.* run, vi. 37, vii. 91, viii. 6.

**Reng**, *v.* reign, A ii. 6.

**Renowne**, *s.* reputation, fame, viii. 81. O. F. *renom*. L. *renomen*.

**Rent**, *s.* income, revenue, vi. 13.

**Rese**, *s.* haste, vii. 47. A. S. *ræs*, rush, race.

**Reason**, *s.* reason, x. 27.

**Rest**, *pt. s.* rested, remained, vi. 75.

**Reued**, *pt. pl.* reaved, carried off, iii. 122, ix. 24, x. 18. A. S. *ræfian*.

**Rewfull**, *adj.* pitiful, vi. 13. *rewful*, vi. 38.

**Riche**, *adj.* splendid, iv. 25, 79.

**Ride**, *v.* ride, vi. 14. *rade*, *pt. s.* vii. T. 2, 47, ix. 2.

**Rifld**, *pt. s.* robbed, plundered, ii. 16; *pp.* ii. 17. F. *rifler*. Comp. Icel. *hrifa*, to seize.

**Rig**, *s.* back, vii. 81. A. S. *hrycg*.

**Right**, *adj.* true, rightful, iv. 28; direct, vi. 54; *adv.* truly, exactly, vii. 1, 11; *reght*, *s.* claim, what is due, vi. 78.

**Rightwis**, *adj.* rightful, vii. 113. A. S. *rihtwis*.

**Riueling**, *s.* rough boot made of raw hide, brogue, here a nickname for the Scotch, ii. 19. A. S. *\*geriſſjan*, to wrinkle. Comp. M. H. G. *ribbaltn*.

**Rode**, *s.* rood, cross, vi. 75, xi. 9. A. S. *rôd*.

**Row**, see **Raw**.

**Rowt**, *s.* company, i. 32, vii. 94. *rout*, i. 33, ii. 16, 17, &c. O. F. *rout*. L. *\*riptum*.

**Rughfute**, *adj.* rough-footed, ii. 19.

## S.

**Sad**, *adj.* serious, earnest, v. 2.

**Saine**, *v.* say, i. 81. *say*, iii. 36, 71, ix. 15; *imp. s.* xi. 25. *sai*, *i pr. s.* vii. 73. *say*, v. 31. *sais*, *pr. s.* vii. 169, *pr. pl.* v. 88. *said*, *pt. s.* i. 46, *pt. pl.* i. 43.

**Saite**, *s.* silk, A ii. 84. ? For *say*, O. F. *seie*. L. *sêta*. Comp. G. *seide*. But perhaps *and saite* is a corruption of *unsete*, unbearable, huge.

**Sakles**, *adj.* innocent, ii. 3. A. S. *sacilas*. Goth. *sakjô*, strife.

**Sal**, *i pr. s.* shall, v. T. 1, *pr. s.* v. 6, *pr. pl.* vi. 33. *sall*, *pr. s.* vi. 21, x. 22, *pr. pl.* iii. 118. *sale*, *pr. s.* vii. 15. *suld*, *pt. s.* would, i. 43, 46, *pt. pl.* iii. 53.

**Salton**, *2 pr. s.* wilt thou, ii. 23, x. 21, xi. 25.

**Salue**, *v.* salute, greet, v. 4. F. *saluer*. L. *salutare*.

**Samyn**, *adv.* together, A ii. 236.

**samyn**, *v.* to gather, A ii. 243. A. S. *at-somme*.

**Sandes**, *pl.* sands, v. 71.

**Sare**, *adj.* sore, i. 15; *adv.* sorely, bitterly, v. 12, 13, viii. 60. *sore*, vii. 156.

**Sari**, *adj.* sorry, vii. 88. *sary*, wretched, i. 72, 73, v. 28.

**Satt**, see **Sittes**.

**Saul**, *s.* soul, iii. 3. **saules**, *pl.* iii. 114. **sawls**, v. 88.

**Sawes**, *pl.* sayings, v. 2, ix. 56. A. S. *sagu*.

**Sayland**, *pres. p.* sailing, v. 60.

**Schac**, *v.* shake, iv. 30.

**Schame**, *s.* shame, i. 64, ii. 12, &c. shame, i. 65.

**Schawes**, *pl.* thickets, shaws, xi. 2. A. S. *scaga*.

**Scheld**, *s.* shield, i. 14. **schelde**, iv. 50, vii. 105.

**Scheltron**, *s.* squadron, v. 63. **schilterouns**, *pl.* vi. 6. A. S. *scild truma*, shield troop. Mod. Eng. *shelter*. Comp. 'Pey hadde to holde stout scheldes trome,' Octavian, 50/1595, and see Barbour, Bruce, xii. 429 note.

**Schende**, *v.* disgrace, confound, vi. 21. **schent**, *pp.* ix. 26, 27.

**Schene**, *adj.* bright, glittering, v. 63, vi. 6, vii. 105, xi. 2.

**Schent**, see **Schende**.

**Schew**, *v.* shew, vii. 12, xi. 2.

**Schilterouns**, see **Scheltron**.

**Schipherdstanes**, *pl.* shepherds' staves, ix. 20.

**Schipmen**, *pl.* sailors, iii. 49, v. 67.

**Schippes**, *pl.* ships, i. 19, iii. 91, v. 71.

**Schope**, *pt. s.* created, iii. 1.

**Schoting**, *s.* shooting, v. 49.

**Schowre**, *s.* abundance, ix. 43. A. S. *scur*.

**Schrewes**, *pl.* rascals, ix. 26, 27. A. S. *scréawa*, shrewmouse.

**Schriue**, *v.* confess, x. 20.

**Scomfiting**, *s.* discomfiting, A i. 26.

**Se**, *s.* sea, iii. 1, vii. 9, 11, 15.

**Se**, *pr. pl.* see, vii. 70 (perhaps, *pt. pl.*). **saw**, *pt. s.* vii. 79. **sene**, *pp.* ii. 3, iv. 14, vii. 104, viii. 79.

**See-gronde**, *s.* bottom of the sea, x. 4.

**Sege**, *s.* siege, vii. 171, viii. T. 2: O. F. *siege*. L. *\*sedium*.

**Seke**, *pl.* sick people, A ii. 146.

**Sembland**, *s.* mien, appearance, vii. 104, viii. 79. O. F. *samblant*, *semblant*. L. *\*similantem*.

**Sembled**, *pt. s.* assembled, iii. 87.

**Semely**, *adj.* becoming, handsome, vi. 5. **semly**, viii. 28. Icel. *sæmr*.

**Semid**, *pt. s.* seemed, iv. 61, v. 49.

**Sen**, *conj.* since, i. 72; *prep.* iii. 109. Contracted M. E. *sippen*. A. S. *siddan*, after that.

**Sendes**, *imp. pl.* send, xi. 33.

**Senin**, *adv.* afterwards, ix. 44. But a doubtful form.

**Sere**, *adj.* several, ix. 56. Icel. *ser*, dative of reflexive pronoun, for oneself.

**Sergantes**, *pl.* sergeants, soldiers, v. 22. **segantes**, viii. 28.

**Seruiss**, *s.* service, attendance, ix. 43.

**Set**, 2 *pr. s. subj.* betake, x. 20 (perhaps aphetic for *biset*). **sett**, *pt. pl.* set, vii. 68.

**Sepin**, *adv.* afterwards, ix. 44 (conjecture). **sithen**, A ii. 57. A. S. *siddan*.

**Seuyn**, seven, iv. 38.

**Sexty**, sixty, iii. 98.

**Site**, *s.* sorrow, vii. 65. Icel. *sit*, sorrow; *sýta*, to wail. The phrase sorrow and site (soght) is corrupted into sorrow unsoght as in York Plays, 103/44.

**Sittes**, 2 *pr. s.* sittest, i. 1. **satt**, *pt. s.* ix. 35.

**Sithen**, see **sepin**.

**Skarlet**, *s.* scarlet cloth, x. 12.

**Skottis**, *adj.* Scotch, i. 79.

**Skrith**, *v.* slip away, escape, v. 68. Comp. Cath. Angl. *scrythe*, labi, labare, lapsare. Icel. *skriða*, to creep, crawl, slide. A. S. *scriðan*, to go, to wander.

**Sla**, *v.* slay, i. 46. **slogh**, 2 *pt. pl.* ii.

- 3; *pt. pl.* iii. 61, 97. *slayne*, *pp.* vii. 54. *slaine*, vii. 156.
- Slake**, *v.* grow less, disappear, v. 4. *slaked*, *pp.* lessened, i. 53, v. 5. A. S. *sleccan*.
- Slaken**, *v.* diminish, ix. 49. *slokening*, *pres. p.* as *s.* slaking, extinguishing, A ii. 147. *Comp. slokyn*, extingquere, Cath. Angl.
- Slayne**, see **Sla**.
- Slike**, *adj.* such, i. 26, 62, viii. 35. Icel. *slikr*.
- Slogh**, see **Sla**.
- Smale**, *adj.* small, i. 6, iii. 82, vi. 64. small, v. 80, xi. 20.
- Smerted**, *pt. s.* smarted, pained, v. 13.
- Snaper**, *v.* stumble, x. 16. Occurs again in Thomas of Erceldoune, ed. Murray, 381.
- Snaw**, *s.* snow, v. 49.
- Snell**, *adj.* quick, v. 22. A. S. *snell*.
- Socore**, *s.* help, i. 7. *socoure*, *v.* to help, iii. 22.
- Sogat**, *adv.* thus, in such a way, iv. 93, viii. 96. M. E. *gate*, way. Similar accusative adverbs are, *pusgat*, Cursor, 1242, *hugat*, id. 4629, *algat*, and *ell* (usually *elles*), Ratis Raving, 19/633.
- Soght**, *pt. s.* sought, v. 33, vi. 53; *pt. pl.* made for, iii. 73, sought, iii. 107; attacked, vii. 65; *pp.* sought, viii. 50.
- Somer**, *s.* summer, xi. 2. *somers*, *gen. s.* of summer, x. 7.
- Sone**, *adv.* soon, i. 7, iii. 49, 64, &c. *sune*, v. 5, 25.
- Songen**, *pt. pl.* sang, vi. 138.
- Sorow**, *s.* sorrow, i. 64, v. 4, 5, vi. 12. *sorow of*, grief for, x. 20.
- Sowed**, *pt. s.* smarted, v. 12 (said especially of a tingling or stinging sensation, Jamieson). *Comp. Icel. svíða*. O. Swed. *swida*.
- Sowre**, *s.* bitter, ix. 44.
- Sowth**, *s.* south, vii. 7.
- Spac**, see **Speke**.
- Space**, *s.* room, place, vii. 31.
- Spare**, *v.* refrain from, iv. 16, vii. 23, 121, viii. 23, x. 1.
- Speche**, *s.* speaking, talk, vii. 121, viii. 23.
- Spede**, *v.* cause to prosper, i. 33; to succeed, x. 1, xi. 38. A. S. *spēdan*.
- Speke**, *v.* speak, vii. 122, x. 1. *spekes*, *pr. s.* ii. 31. *spac*, *pt. pl.* iii. 20.
- Spere**, *s.* spear, i. 14, iii. 96, &c.
- Spill**, *v.* waste, ii. 33.
- Sprede**, *v.* disperse, i. 37.
- Staf**, *s.* staff, vii. 100.
- Stalworthly**, *adv.* stoutly, v. 43, viii. 86. *stalworthly*, iv. 50.
- Stand**, *v.* stand, xi. 33. *standes*, *pr. s.* stands, v. 74. *stonde*, *v.* ix. 11. *stode*, *pt. s.* iii. 75, *pt. pl.* v. 75; 2 *pt. pl.* x. 30.
- Stane-still**, *adj.* still as stone, ii. 32.
- Stareand**, *pres. p.* staring, iii. 67.
- Starkly**, *adv.* exceedingly, A i. 7. A. S. *stearc*.
- Sted**, *pp.* bested, in *straytly sted*, hard pressed, A ii. 242.
- Stede**, *s.* steed, i. 54, iii. 24, &c. *stedes*, *pl.* vii. 101, ix. 11.
- Stede**, *s.* place, or perhaps *stead*, conjuncture (*comp.* Sir Gowther, 489), viii. 43. A. S. *stede*.
- Stele**, *v.* steal, iii. 84, viii. 14.
- Stele**, *s.* steel, iii. 102.
- Steren**, *adj.* stern, ii. 13.
- Sternes**, *pl.* stars, iii. 67. Icel. *stjarna*.
- Stif**, *adj.* strong, stout, iv. 76, vii. 50.
- Stik**, *v.* stab, viii. 14.
- Still**, *adv.* quietly, iii. 87, iv. 94, vi. 57; *adj.* quiet, v. 75, vii. 101.
- Stint**, *pt. s.* stopped, ended, v. 43. A. S. *styntan*, to blunt.



**Stirt**, *pt. s.* hastened, xi. 15. See *start* in Skeat, Etymol. Dict.  
**Stode**, see **Stande**.  
**Stole**, *s.* stole, vii. 138. L. *stola*.  
**Stonde**, see **Stand**.  
**Stound**, *s.* time, short time, v. 75. *stounde*, A i. 16. *stond*, A ii. 31. A. S. *stund*.  
**Stout**, *adj.* proud, haughty, x. 30.  
**Stowre**, *s.* conflict, i. 89. O. F. *estor*, *estoure*, from G. *sturm*.  
**Strate**, *s.* narrow way, pass, vi. 56. O. F. *estroit*. L. *\*strictum*.  
**Streame**, *s.* stream, river, v. 74. *stremis*, *pl.* iii. 73.  
**Stremers**, *pl.* long and narrow flags, v. 75.  
**Strenkith**, *imp. s.* strengthen, vi. 77; *s.* strength, x. 30.  
**Strete**, *pl.* streets, ii. 25.  
**Streyn**, *pp.* struggled, fought, viii. 86.  
**Strif**, *s.* dispute, iii. 4. *striue*, *s.* conflict, v. 43.  
**Stroy**, *v.* destroy, iii. 48.  
**Stumbill**, *v.* stumble, vii. 99. *stumbilde*, *pt. pl.* i. 88.  
**Suld**, see **Sal**.  
**Sum**, *adj.* some, ii. 32, iii. 62, &c.; *pron.* iii. 65, 67, 68, 99.  
**Sun**, *s.* son, vii. 28, viii. 70, 92. *sons*, *pl.* iii. 15.  
**Suth**, *s.* truth, i. 76, 81, iii. 71, &c.; *adj.* true, v. 2. A. S. *sóð*.  
**Suthwest**, *s.* southwest, v. 60.  
**Swelt**, *pt. s.* died, xi. 9. A. S. *sweltan*.  
**Sword**, *s.* sword, viii. 13, 61.  
**Swete**, *s.* sweet, ix. 44.  
**Swink**, *v.* toil, work, iv. 86. A. S. *swincan*.  
**Swith**, *adv.* quickly, v. 67, viii. 51, ix. 43; very, A ii. 215. A. S. *swið*, strong.  
**Swire**, *s.* neck, viii. 68. A. S. *sweora*.  
**Syde**, *s.* coast, iii. 74; side, vi.

12, xi. 33. *side*, vi. 65. *sides*, *pl.* i. 15, vii. 52.  
**Syn**, *s.* sin, iv. 12, vi. 76, &c. *sins*, *pl.* vi. 81.  
**Syr**, *s.* sir, xi. 6. *syre*, *s.* lord, viii. 69.

## T.

**Taburns**, *pl.* tabours, small drums, x. 8. O. F. *tabourin*, diminutive of *tabour* from Span. *atambor* from Arab. *tabir* (Littré).  
**Taile**, *s.* tail, vii. 15.  
**Tak**, *v.* take, vii. 24, 140. *toke*, *pt. s.* iii. T. 2, 33. *tuke*, vi. 61. *toke*, *pt. pl.* iii. 45, viii. 43; 2 *pt. pl.* viii. 11. *tok*, *pt. pl.* v. 18. *tane*, *pp.* ix. 66. *taken*, ix. 34.  
**Tarettes**, *pl.* transport vessels of the galley type, iii. 80. O. F. *taride*, of Arabic origin.  
**Teched**, *pt. s.* taught, ix. 3.  
**Tene**, *s.* sorrow, trouble, v. 65, vi. 2, A ii. 135. A. S. *téona*.  
**Teres**, *pl.* tears, vii. 91.  
**pa**, *pron. pl.* those, v. 61. Comp. Cursor, 11537. *pa*, the, or that, vii. 166.  
**pai**, *pron.* they, i. 15. *pam*, them, i. 29; to them, i. 73. *paire*, their, i. 38. *payre*, *gen. pl.* of them, iii. 23. A. S. *pára*.  
**pan**, *adv.* then, iii. 14, 33, &c.; *conj.* than, iii. 112.  
**Thar**, *pr. s.* it needs, vi. 23. A. S. *ic ðearf* from *ðurfan*.  
**parat**, *adv.* thereat, at that, iii. 42.  
**parby**, *adv.* near that place, iv. 41, xi. 20.  
**pare**, *adv.* there, ii. 22, 23, &c.  
**par**, iv. 87. *paire*, ix. 65.  
**parfore**, *adv.* therefore, i. 79, vii. 127, ix. 64.  
**parein**, *adv.* in it, vi. 74, vii. 14, xi. 10, 11.

pareabout, *adv.* about that, i. 30.  
 pare-ogayne, *adv.* against it, iii. 36.  
 parto, *adv.* for that purpose, thereto, iii. 8, 32.  
 payre, see *Pai*.  
 peder, *adv.* thither, iii. 77.  
 pen, *adv.* thence, A i. 60.  
 Thik, *adj.* thick, vii. 155.  
 Thing, *s.* anything, iii. 26.  
 þir, *pron.* those, iii. 120, vii. 4, ix. 56. Icel. *þeir*, they.  
 þise, these, ii. 26.  
 Think, *pr. s.* sees fit, iv. 6.  
 Thought, *pt. s.* thought, v. 42; *pt. pl.* i. 41, iv. 51; *pp.* iv. 33, viii. 53.  
 Thowsand, thousand, vii. 50, 55.  
 Thre, three, viii. 42.  
 Thretes, *pr. s.* threatens, ii. 31.  
 Threting, *s.* threatening, ii. 30.  
 Thretty, thirty, vii. 50, 55.  
 Thriue, *v.* prosper, v. 42.  
 Thurgh, *prep.* through, i. 68, vii. 43, 155, ix. 10, 17.  
 Tide, *pt. s.* happened, i. 72. For *bitid*.  
 Tide, *s.* time, season, vi. 61, xi. 31, A ii. 225. *tyde*, i. 17, viii. 26, x. 7.  
 Tight, *pp.* purposed, determined, vi. 1. A.S. *tyhtan*, to appoint.  
 Til, *conj.* till, v. 76. till, v. 62.  
 Till, *prep.* to, iii. 54, iv. 95, &c. *tyll*, i. T. 1.  
 Timber, *v.* build, hence make, set up, vi. 2. A.S. *getimbrian*.  
 Tint, see *Tyne*.  
 Tipandes, *pl.* tidings, news, iii. 58. Icel. *tíðindi*, *tíðendi*.  
 Tithe, *s.* tenth part, v. 70.  
 To, *prep.* against, iii. 5; until, iv. 6.  
 To, *adv.* too, vi. 50, vii. 51, viii. 91.  
 To-dongyn, *pp.* utterly beaten, thrashed, vii. 148. *to*, intensive

prefix. Icel. *dengja*. See *Cath. Anglic.*, p. 100, note.  
 Tok, see *Tak*.  
 Tolde, *pp.* held, considered, iv. 77; counted, vii. 55.  
 Toun, *s.* town, iii. 29, vii. 68, 89, 94. *toune*, i. 57, ii. 7, &c. *tounes*, *pl.* iii. 44.  
 Towre, *s.* tower, ix. 40, 41, 52, 66.  
 To-3ere, *adv.* this year, *lit.* for the (present) year, vii. 129, ix. 58.  
 Trais, *v.* deceive, vii. 150. Aphetic for *betraiss* (Barbour, Bruce, Glossary), an alternative form of *betray*, due to influence of O. F. *traïson*.  
 Traisted, *pt. s.* with *of*, trusted in, expected, iv. 58. Icel. *treysta*.  
 Treget, *s.* magic, vii. 136. L. *trans jactus*. See Burguy, under *geter*.  
 Treson, *s.* treason, i. 76, vii. 62, 149, viii. 38, xi. 24. O. F. *traïson*, L. *\*traditionem*.  
 Trest, *s.* trust, vii. 160.  
 Trew, *adj.* true, just, i. 1.  
 Trewly, *adv.* truly, iii. 11 (*trely*, MS.), iv. 4, vii. 55.  
 Trey, *s.* affliction, sorrow, vi. 2, A ii. 135. A.S. *trega*, tribulation.  
 Trip, *s.* stumble, vii. 159 (see note).  
 Trompes, see *Trumpes*.  
 Trone, *s.* throne, i. 1.  
 Throw, *v.* believe, vi. 60. *trowed*, *pt. s.* looked for, iv. 95. *truande*, *pres. p.* confiding, trusting, A ii. 23.  
 Trumped, *pt. pl.* blew trumpets, v. 29.  
 Trumpes, *pl.* trumpets, iv. 80. *trompes*, x. 8.  
 Trumping, *s.* trumpeting, v. 65.  
 Trus, *imp. pl.* make ready, *lit.* pack up for departure, xi. 31. O. F. *trosser*, formed from *torste*, L. L. *torsata*.

Take, see Tak.

Tung, *s.* language, iii. 20.

Tyde, see Tide.

Tyll, see Till.

Tyme, *s.* time, ii. 32, vii. 152, ix. 34.

Tyne, *v.* lose, x. 18. tint, *pt. pl.* vii. 143. Icel. *týna*.

## U, V.

Umlap, *v.* embrace, surround, A ii. 45. A. S. *ymbe*, about; so in next two words.

Vmset, *pt. s.* beset, vii. 96.

Vmstride, *v.* bestride, iv. 69.

Vnder, *adj.* beaten, defeated, ii. 18.

Vncourtayse, *adj.* uncourteous, un-knightly, vii. 145.

Vnderlout, *v.* bow in submission, A ii. 181. A. S. *lutan*, to stoop. Icel. *líta*, to bow down.

Vngayne, *adj.* harmful, A ii. 69. Icel. *gegn*, serviceable, kindly. The corresp. Icel. word is *ð-gegn*.

Vnhale, *adj.* unsound, dishonest, vi. 69.

Vnkind, *adj.* unnatural, v. 11, vii. 145.

Vnkouthé, *adj.* unknown, strange, A ii. 24.

Vnsele, *adv.* unhappily, ix. 27. A. S. *unsæl*. Orm's *usell* is more like Icel. *úsæll*.

Vntill, *prep.* unto, iii. 39, 114.

Vnto, *prep.* to, v. 25, vii. 48.

## W.

Willoway, *interj.* alas! A ii. 81. A. S. *wá lá wá*.

Wait, *v.* to watch for an opportunity to harm, to injure, i. 64. Comp. O. F. *gutter*. F. *guetter*.

Waite, see Wit.

Wake, *v.* to watch, to be anxious, v. 3. waked, *pp.* watched, i.

51. waken, ix. 33; wakened, in trouble, ix. 50.

Wakkins, *pr. s.* awakens, is aroused, vi. 10. wakkind, *pt. s.* roused, stirred up, ix. 50.

Wald, see Will.

Walkes, *pr. s.* travels, spreads, viii. 29. walked, *pt. s.* x. 9.

Wall, *s.* choice, v. 77. Icel. *val*.

Walles, *pl.* walls, vi. 32, 36.

Wan, see Win.

Wandreth, *s.* peril, trouble, A ii. 264. Icel. *vandrathi*.

Wane, see Wone.

Waniand, *s.* lit. waning (moon), v. 30, ix. 25, x. 6. See ix. 25, note.

Wanted, *pt. s.* failed to get, vii. 103.

Wapin, *s.* weapon, v. 36, vii. 133, viii. 15, x. 2. wappen, ix. 32.

Wapnid, *pp.* armed, iv. 39.

War, *imp. pl.* beware, ii. 6.

War, *adj.* wary, cautious, vi. 8.

Wardaine, *s.* warden, viii. 83.

We, *interj.* alas! A ii. 23. A. S. *wá*.

Wede, *s.* armour, v. 38, viii. 5, ix. 37, x. 2. A. S. *wéd*, garment.

Weder, *s.* weather, iv. 48.

Wele, *adv.* well, ii. 5, iii. 101, &c.; quite, vii. 57, viii. 42; reasonably, i. 36; highly, i. 41.

Wele, *s.* weal, success. iii. 18, 52, vi. 9, vii. 117, viii. 16. A. S. *wela*.

Weleful, *adj.* prosperous, viii. 17.

Welth, *s.* riches, vii. 153. welthes, *pl.* x. 11.

Wend, *v.* turn back, i. 67. wonde, ix. 10. wende, go,

ix. 19. wendes, *imp. s.* xi. 29. went, *pp.* gone, vi. 9, vii. 82.

Wene, *1 pr. s.* believe, ii. 4, 5, v. 66, vi. 8. wend, *pt. pl.* imagined, supposed, iii. 62. wened, iii. 63.

Wepe, *v.* weep, xi. 12. wepeand, *pres. p.* viii. 60.

- Were**, *s.* doubt, perplexity, A ii. 56, 79, iii. 95 (?).  
**Were**, *s.* war, vi. 31, vii. 71, viii. 15, A ii. 27, &c.  
**Were**, *v.* make war, i. 12, iii. 95 (?); 2 *pr. subj. s.* x. 21.  
**Weremen**, *pl.* warriors, x. 9 (MS. *werkmen*).  
**Werldes**, *gen. s.* world's, viii. 16.  
**Werldly**, *adj.* worldly, iii. 18.  
**Wery**, *v.* curse, ii. 23. **weried**, *pp.* accursed, A ii. 214. A. S. *werigian*.  
**Wery**, *adj.* weary, iii. 106.  
**Wex**, *pt. s.* grew, iv. 48; *pt. pl.* iii. 106.  
**Wham**, *pron.* whom, xi. 4.  
**Whare**, *adv.* where, ii. 7, iii. 34, 75, &c.  
**Whete**, *s.* wheat, i. 20.  
**Whi**, *adv.* why, vi. 22.  
**Whider**, *adv.* whither, ii. 21.  
**While**, *s.* time, vii. 137.  
**Whilk**, *adj.* which, iii. 46.  
**Whils**, *adv.* while, iii. 112, ix. 12, 62.  
**Whilum**, *adv.* formerly, viii. 5.  
**Whore**, *adv.* where, ix. 19.  
**Whote**, see **Wit**.  
**Wide**, *adv.* widely, vi. 10, viii. 29, x. 9.  
**Wight**, *adj.* active, stout, iv. 87, viii. 5, ix. 37, x. 2, 13, 15.  
**Wikked**, *adj.* wicked, xi. 6; difficult, xi. 8; fierce, A ii. 116.  
**Wild**, *adj.* savage, i. 60. **wilde**, stormy, v. 30.  
**Will**, 1 *pr. s.* will, xi. 7. **wiltou**, 2 *pr. s.* wilt thou, ii. 21. **will**, *pr. pl. i.* 37. **wald**, *pt. s. subj. v.* 4. **walld**, *pt. s.* iv. 56. **wald**, 1 *pt. s.* v. 5; 2 *pt. pl.* viii. 12; *pt. pl.* ix. 31.  
**Win**, *v.* capture, xi. 8. **wan**, *pt. s.* won, viii. 56, xi. T. 1; arrived, vii. T. 1; *pt. pl.* won, viii. 96, ix. 33. **won**, *pp.* v. 72, viii. 95. **wun**, vii. 151. **wo-**  
**nen**, vii. 71, xi. 30. **wonnen**, v. 36, viii. 16.  
**Wirk**, *v.* contrive, viii. 20.  
**Wirschip**, *s.* honour, credit, ix. 32, 33.  
**Wise**, *s.* manner, iii. 47, viii. 95.  
**Wit**, *v.* inform, v. 20. **witten**, *v.* know, ascertain, vii. 4. **waite**, 1 *pr. s.* know, A ii. 98. **whote**, 2 *pr. s.* xi. 4. **wote**, 1 *pr. pl.* xi. 8. **wist**, 1 *pt. s. subj.* knew, x. 1; *pt. pl.* iii. 52, iv. 44.  
**With**, *prep.* against, ii. 6; among, iii. 69; by, iii. 64. **wit**, with, iv. 32.  
**Withouten**, *prep.* without, vii. 47, 138. **withowten**, iii. 4, 100, iv. 35, xi. 15.  
**Wo**, *s.* sorrow, misfortune, iii. 52, v. 11, &c.  
**Wode**, *adj.* mad, vi. 73. A. S. *wōd*. Goth. *\*wōps*.  
**Won**, see **Win**.  
**Won**, *v.* dwell, ii. 23. **wone**, A ii. 25. **wonand**, *pres. p.* vi. 74. A. S. *wunian*.  
**Wonde**, see **Wend**.  
**Wonder**, *adv.* strangely, i. 74.  
**Wone**, *s.* plenty, abundance, iv. 37. **wane**, iii. 93. Icel. *ván*, chance. See Zapitza, Guy of Warwick, 10329, note.  
**Woning**, *s.* dwelling, iv. 2, xi. 8.  
**Won**, **Wonen**, **Wonnen**, see **Win**.  
**Wonyngstedes**, *pl.* places of abode, A ii. 45. A. S. *stede*.  
**Wordes**, *pl.* words, i. 28, 45, &c.  
**Worth**, 3 *imp. s.* become, be, ii. 11. **wurth**, ii. 5, 17, 29, 35. A. S. *weorpan*.  
**Worthli**, *adj.* worthy, v. 38. **worthly**, x. 2.  
**Wote**, see **Wit**.  
**Woundes**, *pl.* wounds, i. 91.  
**Wrath**, see **Wroth**.  
**Wreke**, 2 *pr. s. subj.* avenge, xi.

6. wroken, *pp.* ii. 4. wrokin,  
ii. 5.  
Wretohe, *s.* wretch, outcast, ii.  
21, 23. wreches, *pl.* v. 36.  
wretches, v. 57.  
Wreten, *pp.* written, vii. 3.  
Wroght, *pt. s.* wrought, i. 45; *pt.*  
*pl.* vii. 62; *pp.* iii. 120, vi. 31.  
Wroken, Wrokin, see Wreke.  
Wrote, *v.* root up, vi. 32, 33.  
A. S. *wrotan*.  
Wroth, *adj.* angry, iii. 5, 42, xi.  
12. wrath, vii. 14.  
Wurth, see Worth.  
Wurth, *adj.* worth, i. 24.  
Wurthi, *adj.* worthy, v. 77.

## Y.

3ate, *s.* gate, vii. 49, viii. 89.

3eme, *v.* guard, keep, A ii. 205,  
210. 3emid, *pp.* A ii. 211.  
A. S. *giman*. Goth. *gaumjan*.  
3emer, *s.* keeper, A ii. 213.  
Comp. Icel. *geymir*.  
3ere, see To-3ere; *pl.* iii. 110.  
3ern, *adv.* eagerly, A ii. 122.  
A. S. *georn*.  
3it, *adv.* yet, still, i. 49, ii. 6, iii.  
99, &c.  
3olden, *pp.* given up, yielded, viii.  
89.  
3ong, *pl.* young people, iii. 19.  
3ow, *pron.* you, i. T. 1, ii. T. 1, 10,  
&c.; for you, vi. 1.  
3owre, *adj.* your, vi. 4.  
Yren, *s.* iron, iii. 102.  
Yt, *pron.* it, iii. 10.

## INDEX OF NAMES.

- Abirdene, ii. 1.  
 Abuyle, vii. 134.  
 Aile, Iohn of, v. 63.  
 Andwerp, iii. 34.  
 Angus, A iv. 167.  
 Armouth, iii. 76.  
 Artayse, vii. 147.  
 Arwell, v. 20.  
 Aukland, A iv. 68.  
  
 Badding, Iohn, v. 59.  
 Baliolfe, Edward þe, ix. 2.  
 Banocburn, ii. T. 2; Bannok burn,  
     ii. 2.  
 Barbenoire, note on, x. 19.  
 Bauere, Lowis of, iii. 13.  
 Beme, the King of, iv. 67, vii. 107.  
 Bertram, A iv. 155.  
 Berwik opon Twede, i. 56; Ber-  
     wik, ii. 1, 35; Berwike, A i. 33.  
 Beure parke, A iv. 63.  
 Blankebergh, v. 27.  
 Braband, þe duke of, iii. 25, iv.  
     22; a Braban, vi. 62.  
 Braband, iii. T. 1, 12, 38, iv. 2, 13.  
 Bruse, Daud þe, ix. 1, 9, 34, 35;  
     Dauyd le Bruys, A iii. 1; Ro-  
     bert, id. 59.  
 Bretayne, x. 25.  
 Brug, ii. 22; Bruge, v. 15; Bruges,  
     v. 19; Burghes, ii. 25.  
  
 Cagent, v. 64.  
 Calais, vii. 168, viii. T. 1, 59, 91,  
     95; Calays, vii. 172, viii. 1, 42,  
     53.  
 Cane, vii. 47, 68.  
 Carlele, ix. 31.  
  
 Charters, Thomas, A iv. 189.  
 Comyn, Sir Ion þe, i. 77.  
 Coupland, Iohn of, ix. 37, A iv.  
     212.  
 Cressy, vii. 78, 102, 134.  
 Cristofer, iii. 75; Cristofir, v. 74.  
 Cuthbert of Dorem, ix. 63.  
  
 Doncaster, Iohn of, xi. 13.  
 Donde, i. 66, ii. 24.  
 Dorem, ix. 31; Dureme, A iii.  
     27.  
 Dowglas, William þe, ix. 42, A iv.  
     33.  
 Duche, iii. 20.  
  
 Eurwik, A ii. 43.  
  
 Flandres, i. 68, iii. 6; Flandres  
     syde, iii. 74, v. 8, 10.  
 flemangrye, iv. 74.  
 France, i. 68, &c.  
 France, Iohn of, vii. 23, 51, 60,  
     76, xi. 6, &c.  
 Franceis, vii. 133.  
  
 Gaunston, A ii. 142.  
 Geneuayse, vii. 142.  
 Glowceter, Erle of, v. 53.  
 Gines, xi. 14, 28; Gynes, xi. T. 2,  
     7, 26.  
  
 Halidon Hyll, i. T. 2; Halydon  
     hill, i. 58; Halidown hille, A. i.  
     31; Halidoune hille, id. 46.  
 Hampton, iii. 59.  
 Henueres, A ii. 134.  
 Hoggas, vii. T. 1, 39.

Ierusalem, A ii. 165.  
Ipyre, v. 19.

Klinton, Sir Wiliam of, v. 47.  
Knaresmire, A ii. 140.  
Kyret, Sir Hugh, v. 8.

Lankaster, þe duc of, v. 41.  
Ledel, A iv. 19, 37.  
Londen, toure of, ix. 40, 52.  
Loundres, A iii. 72.

Mawnay, Sir Walter þe, v. 39.  
Merington, A iv. 74.  
Merlin, vii. 2, 6, 7, A ii. 9.  
Minot, v. 1; Laurence, vii. 20.  
Morauiia, Comes de, A iv. 193.  
Morlay, Sir Robard out of, v. 32.  
Morre, þe Erle, i. 42.  
Moubray, A iii. 23, A iv. 177.

Nauerne, iv. 70.  
Neuell, A iv. 98.  
Neuil Cross, ix. T. 2, 28, A iii. 27.  
Norhamton, þe Erle of, v. 37.  
Normandes, v. 18, 23, 34; Normondes, v. 9, 28.  
Normondye, i. 18. Normundy, vii. 72.

Okyll, A iv. 178.  
Ouse, A ii. 106.

Pariss, iii. 45.  
Percy, A iii. 23, A iv. 96.

Saint Iohnes toune, ii. 7.  
Saint Omers, xi. 31.  
Seland syde, iii. 74.  
Sluse, v. 17. Sluys, v. 63.  
Spaniardes, x. T. 2.  
Striflin, ii. 13.  
Swin, v. 12, 22, 33, x. 7.

Tems, A ii. 248.  
Tournay, vi. T. 2; Towrenay, vi. 1; Turnay, vi. 54.  
Trent, ix. 22.  
Twede, ix. 22, A i. 38.

Valas, Filip, i. 69, &c.; Philippe de Valoys, A iii. 2.

Viene, Iohn de, viii. 82.

Westminster hall, ix. 11.

3ork, þe ersbisschop of, ix. 29, A iii. 21.

## WORDS EXPLAINED IN THE NOTES.

All if, i. 85.  
ay whils, i. 28.  
Berebag, ii. 20.  
Cog, iii. 79.  
Dare, i. 9.  
distance, ix. 1.  
dray, viii. 34.  
droupe and dare, i. 9.  
dwell, ix. 8.  
Fode, vi. 71.  
frankis fare, vi. 20.  
Gale, vi. 66.  
galliot, iii. 79.  
galley, iii. 79.  
get, ii. 36.  
Hende, vi. 17.  
hendy, vi. 17.  
hurdis, x. 14.  
Mend, i. 29.  
Pavesade, x. 14.

pelers, ii. 15.  
prese, vii. 45.  
prise, iv. 26.  
Raw, iv. 79.  
rent, vi. 13.  
riving, ii. 19.  
romance, vii. 1.  
rughfute, ii. 19.  
Soght, vii. 65.  
sowed, v. 12.  
syde, iii. 74.  
Taret, iii. 79.  
timber, vi. 1.  
Vnder, ii. 18.  
Wait, i. 64.  
wall, v. 77.  
waniand, ix. 25.  
wede, v. 38.  
were, vi. 31.  
with, ii. 6.

THE END.









